

Work Package 3: "Modeling"

# openETCS Architecture and Design Specification

## Software Component Design and Internal Interface Specification

Peter Mahlmann, Bernd Hekele, Baseliyos Jacob, Peyman Farhangi, Uwe Steinke, Christian Stahl, Jakob Gärtner, Mairamou Haman Adji, Stefan Karg, Thorsten Schulz, Marielle Petit-Duche and Alexander Stante

September 2015



---

### Funded by:



Federal Ministry  
of Education  
and Research



Région de  
Bruxelles-  
Capitale



This page is intentionally left blank

**Work Package 3: “Modeling”**

**OETCS/WP3/D3.5.3**  
**September 2015**

# openETCS Architecture and Design Specification

## Software Component Design and Internal Interface Specification

### Document approbation

| Lead author:                                    | Technical assessor:   | Quality assessor:                      | Project lead:                                       |
|---|---|--|---|
| location / date                                 | location / date   | location / date                        | location / date                                     |
| signature<br><br>Peter Mahlmann<br>(DB Netz AG) | signature<br><br>Jan Welte<br>(Technische Universität Braunschweig) | signature<br><br>Marc Behrens<br>(DLR) | signature<br><br>Klaus-Rüdiger Hase<br>(DB Netz AG) |

Peter Mahlmann, Bernd Hekele, Baseliyos Jacob, Peyman Farhangi

DB Netz AG

Uwe Steinke

Siemens AG

Christian Stahl

TWT GmbH

Jakob Gärtner, Mairamou Haman Adji, Stefan Karg

LEA Railergy

Thorsten Schulz

University of Rostock

Marielle Petit-Doche

Systerel

Alexander Stante

Fraunhofer ESK

## Architecture and Design Specification

Prepared for openETCS@ITEA2 Project

**Abstract:** This document describes the architecture and design specification of the openETCS onboard unit (OBU) model. The functional scope of the openETCS OBU model is to cover the functionality required for running on the ETCS level 2 Utrecht Amsterdam track. The OBU model is developed iteratively and the system model is documented in D3.5.x and the functional model is documented in D3.5.x, where x denotes the iteration.

**Disclaimer:** This work is licensed under the "openETCS Open License Terms" (oOLT) dual Licensing: European Union Public Licence (EUPL v.1.1+) AND Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 3.0 – (cc by-sa 3.0)

THE WORK IS PROVIDED UNDER openETCS OPEN LICENSE TERMS (oOLT) WHICH IS A DUAL LICENSE AGREEMENT INCLUDING THE TERMS OF THE EUROPEAN UNION PUBLIC LICENSE (VERSION 1.1 OR ANY LATER VERSION) AND THE TERMS OF THE CREATIVE COMMONS PUBLIC LICENSE ("CCPL"). THE WORK IS PROTECTED BY COPYRIGHT AND/OR OTHER APPLICABLE LAW. ANY USE OF THE WORK OTHER THAN AS AUTHORIZED UNDER THIS OLT LICENSE OR COPYRIGHT LAW IS PROHIBITED.

BY EXERCISING ANY RIGHTS TO THE WORK PROVIDED HERE, YOU ACCEPT AND AGREE TO BE BOUND BY THE TERMS OF THIS LICENSE. TO THE EXTENT THIS LICENSE MAY BE CONSIDERED TO BE A CONTRACT, THE LICENSOR GRANTS YOU THE RIGHTS CONTAINED HERE IN CONSIDERATION OF YOUR ACCEPTANCE OF SUCH TERMS AND CONDITIONS.

<http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0/>  
<http://joinup.ec.europa.eu/software/page/eupl/licence-eupl>

# Modification History

| Version | Sections | Modification / Description                               | Author         | Date       |
|---------|----------|--|----------------|------------|
| 0.1     | all      | Initial document providing structure                     | Peter Mahlmann | 27.05.2015 |
| 0.2     | 2        | New template for design descriptions                     | Peter Mahlmann | 10.06.2015 |
| 0.3     | all      | Transferred existing documentation to new template       | Peter Mahlmann | 22.06.2015 |
| 0.4     | 5        | Updated component hierarchy to match current SCADE model | Peter Mahlmann | 15.09.2015 |

# Table of Contents

|   |           |
|---|-----------|
| <b>Modification History .....</b>                           | <b>iv</b> |
| <b>List of Figures .....</b>                                | <b>ix</b> |
| <b>Todo list .....</b>                                      | <b>x</b>  |
| <b>1 Introduction .....</b>                                 | <b>1</b>  |
| 1.1 Input Documents .....                                   | 1         |
| 1.2 Software and Tools used for Development .....           | 1         |
| 1.3 General Remarks on the openETCS OBU Model .....         | 2         |
| <b>I System Architecture and Functional Breakdown .....</b> | <b>3</b>  |
| <b>2 System Architecture .....</b>                          | <b>4</b>  |
| 2.1 Top Level Architecture and External Interfaces .....    | 4         |
| 2.2 Functional breakdown of the ETCS OBU .....              | 5         |
| <b>II Design Description .....</b>                          | <b>7</b>  |
| <b>3 General Design Decisions .....</b>                     | <b>8</b>  |
| <b>4 F1: Receive Information from Trackside .....</b>       | <b>9</b>  |
| 4.1 ETCS Messaging: TrackMessages .....                     | 9         |
| 4.1.1 Component Requirements .....                          | 9         |
| 4.1.2 Interface .....                                       | 10        |
| 4.1.2.1 Inputs .....  | 10        |
| 4.1.2.2 Outputs .....                                       | 11        |
| 4.1.3 Subcomponents .....                                   | 13        |
| 4.1.3.1 Read_Packets .....                                  | 13        |
| 4.1.3.2 Extract Packet 5 .....                              | 14        |
| <b>5 F2: ETCS Kernel .....</b>                              | <b>16</b> |
| 5.1 ETCS Kernel Overview .....                              | 16        |
| 5.1.1 External Interfaces .....                             | 17        |
| 5.1.1.1 External Inputs .....                               | 24        |
| 5.1.1.2 External Outputs .....                              | 27        |
| 5.2 F2.1: Manage_TrackSideInformation_Integration .....     | 29        |
| 5.2.1 Component Requirements .....                          | 29        |
| 5.2.2 Interface .....                                       | 30        |
| 5.2.2.1 Inputs .....  | 30        |
| 5.2.2.2 Outputs .....                                       | 43        |
| 5.2.3 Subcomponents .....                                   | 48        |
| 5.2.3.1 Receive_TrackSide_Msg .....                         | 48        |
| 5.2.3.2 CheckBGConsistency .....                            | 50        |
| 5.2.3.3 CheckEuroradioMessage .....                         | 51        |
| 5.2.3.4 ValidateDataDirection .....                         | 52        |
| 5.2.3.5 InformationFilter .....                             | 53        |

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| 5.3 F2.2: Manage_ETCS_Procedures .....         | 54  |
| 5.3.1 Component Requirements .....             | 54  |
| 5.3.2 Interface .....                          | 55  |
| 5.3.2.1 Inputs .....                           | 55  |
| 5.3.2.2 Outputs .....                          | 60  |
| 5.3.3 Subcomponents .....                      | 64  |
| 5.3.3.1 Awakness_of_Train .....                | 64  |
| 5.3.3.2 NP .....                               | 64  |
| 5.3.3.3 SoM_L2_3_FS_SR_OS_LS_SH .....          | 65  |
| 5.3.3.4 SoM_NTC_SN .....                       | 65  |
| 5.4 F2.3: trainData .....                      | 66  |
| 5.4.1 Component Requirements .....             | 66  |
| 5.4.2 Interface .....                          | 67  |
| 5.4.2.1 Inputs .....                           | 67  |
| 5.4.2.2 Outputs .....                          | 73  |
| 5.4.3 Subcomponents .....                      | 77  |
| 5.4.3.1 trainDataStorage .....                 | 77  |
| 5.4.3.2 checkRadioMessages .....               | 77  |
| 5.4.3.3 sendValidTrainDataRBC .....            | 78  |
| 5.4.3.4 sendAcknowledgementRBC .....           | 78  |
| 5.4.3.5 checkAcknowledgementGeneral .....      | 79  |
| 5.5 F2.4: TrackAtlas .....                     | 79  |
| 5.5.1 Component Requirements .....             | 79  |
| 5.5.2 Interface .....                          | 80  |
| 5.5.2.1 Inputs .....                           | 80  |
| 5.5.2.2 Outputs .....                          | 81  |
| 5.5.3 Subcomponents .....                      | 82  |
| 5.5.3.1 StoreRaw_NV .....                      | 82  |
| 5.5.3.2 Build_GradientProfile .....            | 82  |
| 5.5.3.3 Build_MA .....                         | 83  |
| 5.5.3.4 Build_MRSP .....                       | 83  |
| 5.5.3.5 Manage_EmergencyStop .....             | 84  |
| 5.5.3.6 C_P003V1_OBU_P003_OBU .....            | 84  |
| 5.5.3.7 GradientProfile_to_DMI .....           | 85  |
| 5.5.3.8 Manage_MA_Request .....                | 85  |
| 5.5.3.9 TA_to_ML .....                         | 86  |
| 5.5.3.10 SSP_to_MRSP .....                     | 86  |
| 5.5.3.11 MRSP_to_MRSP_to_DMI .....             | 87  |
| 5.6 F2.5: Mode_and_Level .....                 | 87  |
| 5.6.1 Component Requirements .....             | 87  |
| 5.6.2 Interface .....                          | 88  |
| 5.6.2.1 Inputs .....                           | 88  |
| 5.6.2.2 Outputs .....                          | 96  |
| 5.6.3 Subcomponents .....                      | 99  |
| 5.6.3.1 Level_Management .....                 | 99  |
| 5.6.3.2 Mode_Management .....                  | 100 |
| 5.6.3.3 Check_and_Provide_Mode_and_Level ..... | 101 |
| 5.7 F2.6: calculateTrainPosition .....         | 102 |
| 5.7.1 Component Requirements .....             | 102 |
| 5.7.2 Interface .....                          | 103 |
| 5.7.2.1 Inputs .....                           | 103 |
| 5.7.2.2 Outputs .....                          | 107 |

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| 5.7.3 Subcomponents .....                                    | 113 |
| 5.7.3.1 msg_2_passedBG .....                                 | 113 |
| 5.7.3.2 calculateBGLocations .....                           | 114 |
| 5.7.3.3 delDisposableBGs .....                               | 115 |
| 5.7.3.4 addAnnouncedBGs .....                                | 115 |
| 5.7.3.5 calculateTrainpositionInfo .....                     | 116 |
| 5.7.3.6 calculateTrainPositionAttributes .....               | 116 |
| 5.7.3.7 linkedBG_missed .....                                | 117 |
| 5.7.3.8 twoconsecutiveLinkedBGs_missed .....                 | 118 |
| 5.8 F2.7: SpeedSupervision_Integration .....                 | 118 |
| 5.8.1 Component Requirements .....                           | 118 |
| 5.8.2 Interface .....  | 119 |
| 5.8.2.1 Inputs .....   | 119 |
| 5.8.2.2 Outputs .....  | 122 |
| 5.8.3 Subcomponents .....                                    | 128 |
| 5.8.3.1 SDM_InputWrapper .....                               | 128 |
| 5.8.3.2 TargetManagement .....                               | 129 |
| 5.8.3.3 AGradient .....                                      | 130 |
| 5.8.3.4 ABrakeFactory .....                                  | 131 |
| 5.8.3.5 addGradient .....                                    | 132 |
| 5.8.3.6 CalcBrakingCurves_Integration .....                  | 132 |
| 5.8.3.7 SDMLimitLocations .....                              | 133 |
| 5.8.3.8 SDM_Commands .....                                   | 134 |
| 5.9 F2.8: Provide_Position_Report .....                      | 135 |
| 5.9.1 Component Requirements .....                           | 135 |
| 5.9.2 Interface .....  | 136 |
| 5.9.2.1 Inputs .....   | 136 |
| 5.9.2.2 Outputs .....  | 145 |
| 5.9.3 Subcomponents .....                                    | 146 |
| 5.9.3.1 ReceiveReportParameters .....                        | 147 |
| 5.9.3.2 PosReport_Supervision .....                          | 147 |
| 5.9.3.3 ErrorManager .....                                   | 148 |
| 5.9.3.4 Build_Packets0_1 .....                               | 148 |
| 5.9.3.5 Build_PosReport .....                                | 149 |
| 5.9.3.6 AddBGToFIFO .....                                    | 149 |
| 5.10 F2.9: Manage_Radio_Communication and RBC_Handover ..... | 150 |
| 5.10.1 Component Requirements .....                          | 150 |
| 5.10.2 Interface .....                                       | 151 |
| 5.10.2.1 Inputs .....  | 152 |
| 5.10.2.2 Outputs .....                                       | 160 |
| 5.10.3 Subcomponents .....                                   | 168 |
| 5.10.3.1 RBC_Handover .....                                  | 168 |
| 5.10.3.2 Management_of_Radio_Communication .....             | 169 |
| 5.10.3.3 mobileDataRouter .....                              | 170 |
| 5.11 F2.10: ManageDMIInput .....                             | 171 |
| 5.11.1 Component Requirements .....                          | 171 |
| 5.11.2 Interface .....                                       | 171 |
| 5.11.2.1 Inputs .....  | 171 |
| 5.11.2.2 Outputs .....                                       | 172 |
| 5.11.3 Subcomponents .....                                   | 173 |
| 5.12 F2.11: ManageDMIOOutput .....                           | 173 |
| 5.12.1 Component Requirements .....                          | 173 |

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| 5.12.2 Interface .....                        | 174        |
| 5.12.2.1 Inputs .....                         | 174        |
| 5.12.2.2 Outputs .....                        | 175        |
| 5.12.3 Subcomponents .....                    | 175        |
| 5.12.3.1 cyclicReportToDMI.....               | 176        |
| 5.12.3.2 ManageTextMessages.....              | 176        |
| 5.12.3.3 copyTrackDescription .....           | 177        |
| 5.12.3.4 toEntryRequest .....                 | 177        |
| 5.12.3.5 sendBrakesToDMI .....                | 178        |
| 5.12.3.6 manageDMI_Output.....                | 178        |
| 5.12.3.7 sendTrainData .....                  | 179        |
| 5.12.3.8 sendVersion .....                    | 179        |
| 5.12.3.9 sendLevelListPkg .....               | 180        |
| 5.13 F2.12: ManageTIUInput.....               | 180        |
| 5.13.1 Component Requirements .....           | 180        |
| 5.13.2 Interface .....                        | 180        |
| 5.13.2.1 Inputs .....                         | 181        |
| 5.13.2.2 Outputs .....                        | 181        |
| 5.13.3 Subcomponents .....                    | 182        |
| 5.13.3.1 mergeTIU_Info.....                   | 182        |
| 5.13.3.2 getTIUStatusFromData .....           | 183        |
| 5.14 F2.13: ManageTIUOutput .....             | 183        |
| 5.14.1 Component Requirements .....           | 183        |
| 5.14.2 Interface .....                        | 184        |
| 5.14.2.1 Inputs .....                         | 184        |
| 5.14.2.2 Outputs .....                        | 185        |
| 5.14.3 Subcomponents .....                    | 186        |
| 5.14.3.1 handleTraction .....                 | 186        |
| 5.14.3.2 manageTIU_output .....               | 186        |
| <b>6 F3: Measure Train Movement .....</b>     | <b>188</b> |
| <b>7 F4: Manage Radio Communication .....</b> | <b>189</b> |
| <b>8 F5: Manage JRU .....</b>                 | <b>190</b> |
| <b>9 F6: DMI Controller .....</b>             | <b>191</b> |
| 9.1 DMI .....                                 | 191        |
| 9.1.1 Component Requirements .....            | 191        |
| 9.1.2 Interface .....                         | 191        |
| 9.1.2.1 Inputs .....                          | 191        |
| 9.1.2.2 Outputs .....                         | 196        |
| <b>10 F7: Manage TIU .....</b>                | <b>200</b> |
| <b>References.....</b>                        | <b>201</b> |

# List of Figures

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Figure 1. Scope of openETCS OBU model system according to ERA TSI Chapter 2.5.....                                | 4   |
| Figure 2. Top level architecture with external interfaces E1 to E10.....  | 5   |
| Figure 3. ETCS OBU system architecture view with internal interfaces I1 to I8.....                                | 6   |
| Figure 4. TrackMessages SysML diagram.....  | 10  |
| Figure 5. F2: ETCS Kernel SysML diagram with focus on F2.1 Manage_TrackSideInformation_Integration component..... | 17  |
| Figure 6. F2: ETCS Kernel SysML diagram with focus on F2.2 Manage_ETCS_Procedures component.....                  | 18  |
| Figure 7. F2: ETCS Kernel SysML diagram with focus on F2.3 trainData component.....                               | 18  |
| Figure 8. F2: ETCS Kernel SysML diagram with focus on F2.4 TrackAtlas component.....                              | 19  |
| Figure 9. F2: ETCS Kernel SysML diagram with focus on F2.5 Mode_and_Level component.....                          | 19  |
| Figure 10. F2: ETCS Kernel SysML diagram with focus on F2.6 calculateTrainPosition component.....                 | 20  |
| Figure 11. F2: ETCS Kernel SysML diagram with focus on F2.7 SpeedSupervision_Integration component.               | 20  |
| Figure 12. F2: ETCS Kernel SysML diagram with focus on F2.8 Provide_Position_Report component.                    | 21  |
| Figure 13. F2: ETCS Kernel SysML diagram with focus on F2.9 Manage_Radio_Communication component.                 | 21  |
| Figure 14. F2: ETCS Kernel SysML diagram with focus on F2.10 ManageDMIInput component.....                        | 22  |
| Figure 15. F2: ETCS Kernel SysML diagram with focus on F2.11 ManageDMIOOutput component.                          | 22  |
| Figure 16. F2: ETCS Kernel SysML diagram with focus on F2.12 ManageTIUInput component.....                        | 23  |
| Figure 17. F2: ETCS Kernel SysML diagram with focus on F2.13 ManageTIUOutput component.....                       | 23  |
| Figure 18. Manage_TrackSideInformation_Integration component SysML diagram.....                                   | 30  |
| Figure 19. Manage_ETCS_Procedures component SysML diagram .....   | 55  |
| Figure 20. trainData component SysML diagram.....   | 67  |
| Figure 21. TrackAtlas component SysML diagram.....  | 80  |
| Figure 22. Mode_and_Level component SysML diagram.....  | 88  |
| Figure 23. Mode_and_Level data flow SysML diagram .....   | 109 |
| Figure 24. Mode_and_Level inputs.....   | 110 |
| Figure 25. Mode_and_Level outputs .....   | 110 |
| Figure 26. calculateTrainPosition SysML diagram .....   | 111 |
| Figure 27. Structure of component SpeedSupervision_Integration.....   | 123 |
| Figure 28. Provide_Position_Report component SysML diagram .....  | 136 |
| Figure 29. Manage_Radio_Communication component SysML diagram .....   | 152 |
| Figure 30. ManageDMIInput SysML diagram .....   | 176 |
| Figure 31. ManageDMIOOutput SysML diagram.....  | 176 |
| Figure 32. ManageTIUInput SysML diagram.....  | 181 |
| Figure 33. ManageTIUOutput SysML diagram .....  | 184 |
| Figure 34. DMI component SysML diagram.....   | 194 |

# Todo list

|  |    |
|--|----|
| links need to be corrected, in particular links to the API documentation.....  | 1  |
| list has to be completed.....  | 1  |
| list and descriptions have to be checked for completeness.....   | 1  |
| Hashtag has to be updated once the model and document are ready for release.....   | 2  |
| Descriptions should be improved .....  | 4  |
| Component descriptions need to be completed.....   | 5  |
| to be completed.....   | 8  |
| Chapter needs to be completed. Will there be more components?.....   | 9  |
| section needs to be completed .....  | 9  |
| Figure: [Put SysML diagram of component here] .....  | 10 |
| components should be listed here .....   | 11 |
| to be checked.....   | 11 |
| descriptions needs to be improved .....  | 16 |
| to be completed.....   | 16 |
| descriptions needs to be improved .....  | 16 |
| reference sections correctly once these are completed.....   | 30 |
| Information filter component description needs to be checked, i.e. is the description still up to date? Should more documentation provided for this component in the ADD (please check with Bernd Hekele)? ..... | 53 |
| Section has to be completed.....   | 54 |
| Figure: [Put SysML diagram of component here] .....  | 55 |
| To be completed.....   | 55 |
| To be completed.....   | 57 |
| To be completed.....   | 57 |

|                       |    |
|-----------------------|----|
| To be completed ..... | 57 |
| To be completed ..... | 58 |
| To be completed ..... | 59 |
| To be completed ..... | 59 |
| To be completed ..... | 59 |
| To be completed ..... | 60 |
| To be completed ..... | 60 |
| To be completed ..... | 60 |
| To be completed ..... | 61 |

|   |    |
|---|----|
| Can we state "start of mission not completed" in case of "false" here?                                      | 63 |
| Can't we reference a component of the model or input of F2 here?  | 67 |
| Can't we reference a component of the model or input of F2 here?  | 68 |
| If this is a percentage, then the range would probably be 0...100. Maybe we should replace percentage here? | 69 |
| needs to be changed to cm/sec   | 69 |
| Can't we reference a component of the model or input of F2 here?  | 69 |
| Can't we reference a component of the model or input of F2 here?  | 70 |
| This description was ambiguous. I tried to be more precise. Please check if this is still correct.          | 70 |
| Can't we reference a component of the model or input of F2 here?  | 70 |
| Should we reference the corresponding input of F2 here?   | 71 |
| Can't we reference a component of the model or input of F2 here?  | 72 |
| Can't we reference a component of the model or input of F2 here?  | 72 |
| Can't we reference a component of the model or input of F2 here?  | 73 |
| Can't we reference a component of the model or input of F2 here?  | 73 |
| redundant information to status. Needs cleaning   | 74 |
| needs to be changed to cm/sec   | 74 |
| we have to reference a component of the model or input of F2 here   | 74 |
| Can't we reference a component of the model or input of F2 here?  | 75 |
| Can't we reference a component of the model or input of F2 here?  | 76 |
| section needs to be completed   | 77 |
| Section needs to be completed   | 79 |
| Figure: [Put SysML diagram of component here]   | 80 |
| to be completed   | 89 |
| to be completed   | 90 |
| to be completed   | 91 |

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Please use exact component name from SCADE model.....                                    | 91  |
| to be completed.....   | 93  |
| to be completed.....   | 94  |
| to be completed.....   | 95  |
| to be completed.....   | 95  |
| To be completed.....   | 120 |
| section and corresponding subsections have to be completed.....                          | 171 |
| section and corresponding subsections have to be completed.....                          | 173 |
| Figure: [Put SysML diagram of component here] .....                                      | 176 |
| Figure: [Put SysML diagram of component here] .....                                      | 176 |
| section and corresponding subsections have to be completed.....                          | 180 |
| Figure: [Put SysML diagram of component here] .....                                      | 181 |
| section and corresponding subsections have to be completed.....                          | 183 |
| Figure: [Put SysML diagram of component here] .....                                      | 184 |
| This chapter needs to be completed and a responsible developer has to be identified..... | 191 |

# 1.1 Introduction

2 A primary goal of the openETCS ITEA2 project is to provide a formal specification and a non-  
 3 vital reference implementation of an ETCS onboard unit (OBU) according to the specification  
 4 defined in Subset-026 [1] by the European Railway Agency (ERA).

5 This deliverable, i.e. D3.5.x, describes the architecture and design specification of the openETCS  
 6 onboard (OBU) model. As the development of the OBU model is done iteratively according to a  
 7 SCRUM process, the last digit of the deliverable identifier, i.e. x, denotes the current iteration  
 8 of the model. This document should be considered as a complement to the following project  
 9 outcomes respectively deliverables:

- 10 • the corresponding SysML model (SCADE System), available at <https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/system>,
- 11 • the corresponding functional model (SCADE Suite), available at <https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System>,
- 12 • the corresponding functional design description, i.e. D3.6.x, and
- 13 • the documentation of the generic openETCS Application Programming Interface (API), avail-  
 14 able at <https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/blob/master/API/description/api-description.pdf>.

15 links need to be corrected, in particular links to the API documentation

16

## 1.1.19 Input Documents

20 The following documents have been the basis for the analysis, functional decomposition, and  
 21 design of the openETCS OBU model:

- 22 • ERA Subset-026 [1], V3.3.0
- 23 • ERA TSI CCS Documents
- 24 • openETCS API documentation, available at <https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/blob/master/API/description/api-description.pdf>
- 25 • openETCS requirements, i.e. D2.1, D2.2,..., D2.9, available at <https://github.com/openETCS/requirements/tree/master/Reference>

26 list has to be completed

27

## 1.2.29 Software and Tools used for Development

30 The following software and tools have been used in the openETCS development process:

31 list and descriptions have to be checked for completeness

- 32 **SCADE System** Version 16.1b of SCADE System has been used for the the generation of  
33 SysML models.
- 34 **SCADE Suite** Version 16.1b of SCADE Suite has been used for the functional modelling of the  
35 openETCS OBU components. Executable models are generated via the SCADE Suite code  
36 generator (KCG), which has been certified for CENELEC EN 50128 at SIL 3/4.
- 37 **SCADE Display** Version 16.1b of SCADE Display has been used for the development of the  
38 Driver Machine Interface (DMI).
- 39 **GitHub** The web based Git repository hosting service GitHub has been used for distributed  
40 revision control and source code respectively model management.

### 1.3 41 General Remarks on the openETCS OBU Model

- 42 The openETCS OBU model has been developed according the specification given in ERA Subset-  
43 026 [1], Version 3.3.0. The software release of the openETCS OBU documented and described  
44 in this document is publicly available at <https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model> and refers to the commit corresponding to the following hashtag:  
45

46 Hashtag has to be updated once the model and document are ready for release

47 1c06cc2d4a0d8f27569e065e2a9edf924b453ff1

- 48 In particular, the root of the SysML model is located at <https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/system> and the root of the functional SCADE Suite model  
49 is located at <https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade>.  
50
- 51 Note that all components of the openETCS OBU have been developed from scratch, no existing  
52 components have been reused.

53

## Part I

54

# System Architecture and Functional Breakdown

55

## 2 56 System Architecture

57 The system architecture of the openETCS OBU is adopted from the system structure defined in  
 58 ERA Subset-026, Chapter 2.5 [1]. Figure 1 shows which parts of the reference architecture are in  
 59 the scope of the openETCS OBU model, cf. dashed red line. Note that also specific parts of the  
 60 ETCS trackside (e.g. Eurobalise and RBC blocks) have been modeled to have an integrated test  
 61 environment, cf. dashed black line in Figure 1.

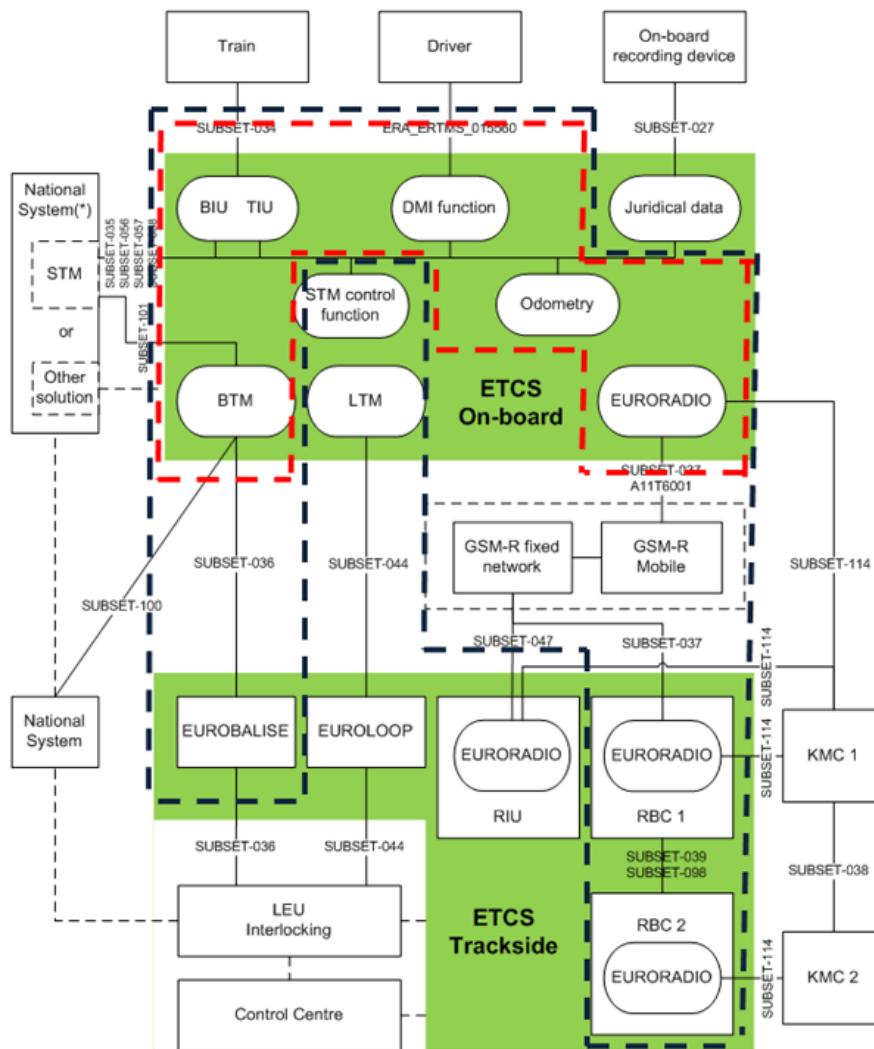


Figure 1. Scope of openETCS OBU model system according to ERA TSI Chapter 2.5. Functional blocks in the scope of openETCS have been marked by the dashed black line. The dashed red line shows the OBU blocks in the scope of openETCS.

### 2.1 62 Top Level Architecture and External Interfaces

63 Figure 2 shows the top level architecture with external interfaces E1, E2, ..., E10. The external  
 64 interfaces are used for the communication between the openETCS OBU (dashed red line) and  
 65 systems out of the scope of the openETCS project and the ETCS Onboard Unit System. In the  
 66 following we give brief overview of the interfaces:

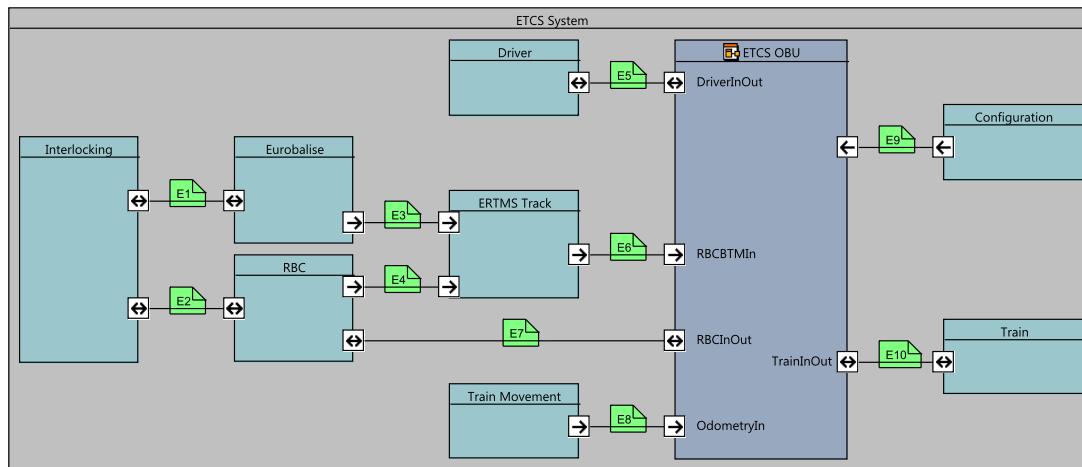


Figure 2. Top level architecture with external interfaces E1 to E10.

Descriptions should be improved

67

68   **E1:** In- and out flow between the Interlocking and the Eurobalise. Only relevant for controlled  
69   Eurobalises.

70   **E2:** Input and output interface between the Interlocking and Radio Block Center (RBC).

71   **E3:** Input interface from the Eurobalise to the ERTMS Track module.

72   **E4:** Input interface from the RBC to the ERTMS Track module.

73   **E5:** This interface is used for the interaction between the driver and the display (Driver Machine  
74   Interface, DMI).

75   **E6:** This interface is a compound structure and combines the interfaces E3 and E4 to send track  
76   side messages from Eurobalises or RBC to the ETCS OBU.

77   **E7:** Input and output interface between RBC and ETCS OBU. This interface is used for the  
78   management of radio communication, e.g. session management, and sending radio messages  
79   from the ETCS OBU to the RBC. Note that the ETCS OBU receives radio messages via  
80   interface E6.

81   **E8:** Input interface to the odometry subsystem of the ETCS OBU. Used for sending information  
82   to the train if there is any movement outside the ETCS system, e.g. "cold movement".

83   **E9:** Input interface to the ETCS OBU to set configuration data such as fixed values, system  
84   values, national values and train configuration.

85   **E10:** Input and output interface between the ETCS OBU and the train. This interface is used for  
86   the interaction between the train and the ETCS OBU such as brake control, traction control,  
87   door control, etc.

## 2.2 88 Functional breakdown of the ETCS OBU

89   Figure 3 depicts the functional breakdown of the ETCS OBU block shown in Figure 2. The  
90   ETCS OBU consists out of 7 functional modules. These are:

91   Component descriptions need to be completed

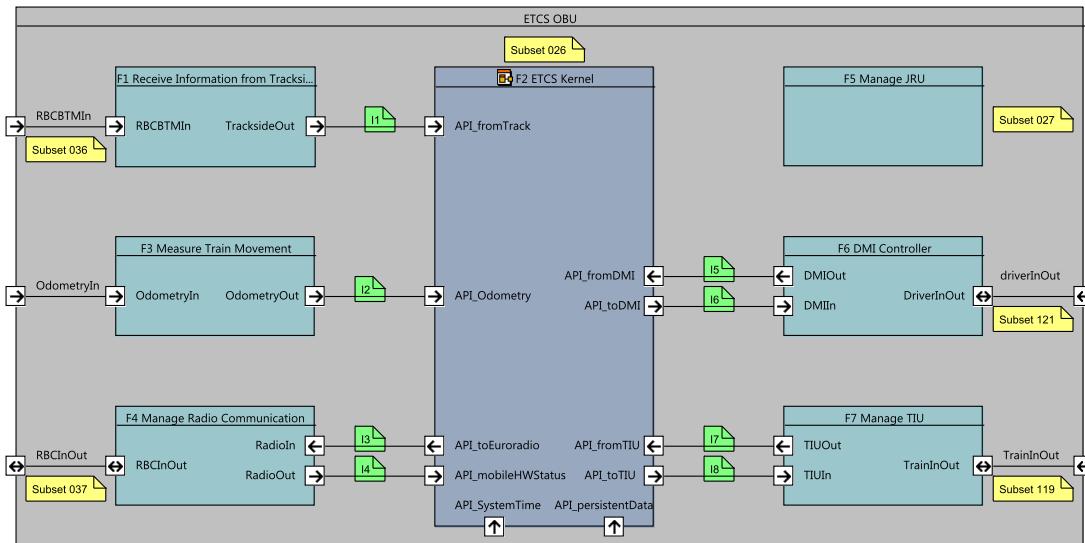


Figure 3. ETCS OBU system architecture view with internal interfaces I1 to I8.

92 **F1 Receive Information from Trackside** This module is responsible for receiving RBC and  
93 BTM messages and passing these to the F2 ETCS Kernel module. A detailed description is  
94 given in Chapter 4.

95 **F2 ETCS Kernel** This module represents core component of the openETCS OBU. A detailed  
96 description is given in Chapter 5.

97 **F3 Measure Train Movement** This module provides odometry data to the F2 ETCS Kernel  
98 module.

#### 99 **F4 Manage Radio Communication**

100 **F5 Manage JRU** This component manages the juridical date. Note that this component is not  
101 included in the functional scope of the openETCS OBU respectively project currently.

#### 102 **F6 DMI Controller**

#### 103 **F7 Manage TIU**

104 These components are interacting via the internal interfaces I1 to I8. In the following we give a  
105 brief description of the interfaces.

106 **I1:** Input interface that allows the F2 ETCS Kernel module to receive information from the  
107 Balise Transmission Module as well as the Radio Block Center.

108 **I2:** Input interface from the Odometry (ODO) to the F2 ETCS Kernel module.

109 **I3:** Output interface between the F4 Manage Radio Communication module and the F2 ETCS  
110 Kernel module. This interface is used for radio session management and sending radio  
111 messages from the OBU to the track side.

112 **I4:** Input interface between the F4 Manage Radio Communication module and the F2 ETCS  
113 Kernel module.

114 **I5:** Input interface between the F6 DMI Controller module and the F2 ETCS Kernel module.

115 **I6:** Output interface between the F6 DMI Controller module and the F2 ETCS Kernel module.

116 **I7:** Input interface between the F7 Manage TIU module and the F2 ETCS Kernel module.

117 **I8:** Output interface between the F7 Manage TIU module and the F2 ETCS Kernel module.

118

## **Part II**

119

# **Design Description**

### 3<sub>120</sub> General Design Decisions

to be completed

121

## 4<sub>122</sub> F1: Receive Information from Trackside

<sub>123</sub> Chapter needs to be completed. Will there be more components?

### 4.1<sub>124</sub> ETCS Messaging: TrackMessages

<sub>125</sub> section needs to be completed

#### 4.1.1 Component Requirements

|                     |  |
|---------------------|--|
| Component name      | TrackMessages::Read_P005   |
| Link to SCADE model | <a href="https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/ETCS_Messaging/TrackMessages">https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/ETCS_Messaging/TrackMessages</a>  |
| SCADE designer      | Jakob Gärtner, LEA Railergy<br>Mairamou Haman Adjı, LEA Railergy   |
| Description         | <p>TrackMessages is a library containing functionality to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Transport TrainToTrack and TrackToTrain messages and packets using a compressed format which is conceptually close to the ETCS language as defined in Subset-026</li> <li>• Compress trackside information and decompress it in the on-board unit, taking into account different baseline versions and providing transparent translation.</li> <li>• Compress trainside information and decompress it in the track-side simulation models, taking into account different baseline versions and providing transparent translation.</li> </ul> |

As TrackMessages is a library with various components supporting all packets and messages defined in Subset-026, we have selected one exemplary function to document the concept. As only the packet/ message- related functionality is specific, this approach will allow a first understanding of the concept and the related interfaces. For a full discussion of the library, refer to the [specifc chapter? document?]

The function Read\_P005 extracts a packet 5 (Gradient Profile) from the compressed packets data flow, if present. It translates the integer-coded compressed data with the help of the metadata in the header section of the CompressedPackets\_T formatted data flow. After performing variable-level translation and exception detection, a baseline-3 conformal packet 5 is available for use within the relevant OBU functions.

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter 6<br>Subset-026, Chapter 7<br>Subset-026, Chapter 8   |
|                        | The objective of this component (the full TrackMessages library) is to provide a full formalisation of above chapters in Subset-026   |
| Safety integrity level | 4   |
| Time constraints       | n/a (for the provided example function)   |
| API requirements       | In the demonstrator context, the API is fully defined on SCADE model level. For integration with external systems (BTM, Radio, Subset-076 or Subset-94), additional conversion to/ from bit-level representation will be required |

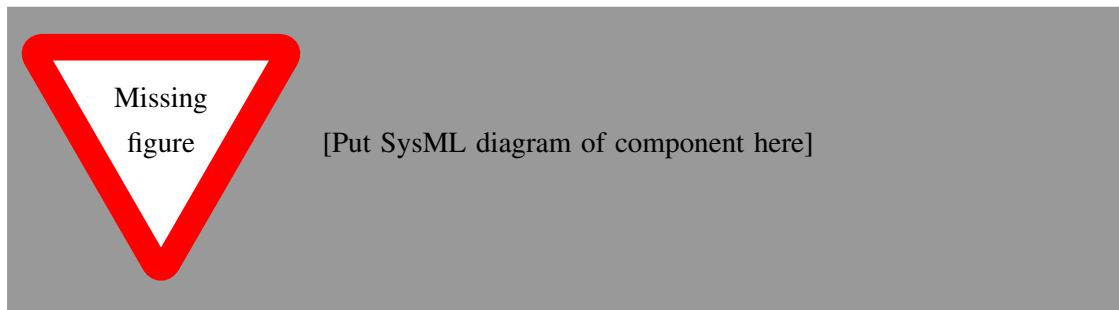
<sup>127</sup> **4.1.2 Interface**

<sup>128</sup> An overview of the interface of component TrackMessages is shown in Figure 4. The inputs and <sup>129</sup> outputs are described in detail in Section 4.1.2.1 respectively 4.1.2.2.

<sup>130</sup> **4.1.2.1 Inputs**

<sup>131</sup> **4.1.2.1.1 Message\_In**

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Input name  | Message_In  |
| Description | Message_In takes the compressed track-to-train messages that have either been compressed by the trackside simulation components of the TrackMessages library, or have been filled by the API. All packets that are part of the same message are transmitted within one cycle of the model's execution. Message_IN is taking the compressed packet information from the track to train dataflow. |
| Source      | Manage_TrackSideInformation_Integration   |
| Type        | Common_Types_Pkg::CompressedPackets_T   |



**Figure 4. TrackMessages SysML diagram**

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Valid range of values                   | The consistency of the metadata is checked at the input side. The ranges of the transported variables are checked at the conversion step (from integer format to SRS-conform format).  |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary     | n/a  |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range | The content of this input is not checked, as any issues will be found at conversion level. If the metadata are not matching the search criteria the packet will be considered as non existent and will therefore be ignored. |

<sup>132</sup> **4.1.2.2 Outputs**

<sup>133</sup> **4.1.2.2.1 received**

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Output name   | received  |
| Description   | Flag to indicate reception of a packet 5 from trackside in the current cycle. |
| Destination   | Any calling component.<br>components should be listed here                    |
| Type  | bool  |
| Valid range of values   | to be checked   |
|   | <b>true</b> Packet 5 has been received in the current cycle.                  |
|   | <b>false</b> Packet 5 has not been received in the current cycle.             |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | n/a   |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | n/a   |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | n/a   |

<sup>134</sup> **4.1.2.2.2 P005\_OBU\_out**

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Output name | P005_OBU_out                                     |
| Description | Gradient Profile (Packet 5) according to 7.4.2.2 |
| Destination | Any calling operator                             |

|                                     |   |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| Type                                | TM::P005_OBU_T  |
| Valid range of values               | <p>TM::P005_OBU_T is a complex data type. Values are given for each element. Format is: Type Name: range/list of values</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• bool valid: [true   false]</li> <li>• q_dir Q_DIR:<br/>[Q_DIR_Both_directions  <br/>Q_DIR_Nominal  <br/>Q_DIR_Reverse]</li> <li>• l_packet L_PACKET: (0-8191)</li> <li>• q_scale Q_SCALE:<br/>[ENUM_Q_SCALE_10cm  <br/>ENUM_Q_SCALE_1m  <br/>ENUM_Q_SCALE_10m]</li> <li>• n_iter N_ITER: (0-33) (<i>Remark: start section from the original packet is integrated into the list of sections</i>)</li> </ul> <p>The structured element sections is an array of type P005_section_enum_T. For each element, the valid range of values is as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• bool valid: [true   false] (<i>Remark: Check for consistency with the value of n_iter</i>)</li> <li>• d_link D_LINK: (0-32767)</li> <li>• q_newcountry Q_NEWCOUNTRY:<br/>[TM_conversions::ENUM_Q_NEWCOUNTRY_same  <br/>TM_conversions::ENUM_Q_NEWCOUNTRY_not_same]</li> <li>• nid_c NID_C: (0-1023)</li> <li>• nid_bg NID_BG: (0-16383)</li> <li>• q_linkorientation Q_LINKORIENTATION:<br/>[TM_conversions::ENUM_Q_LINKORIENTATION_reverse  <br/>TM_conversions::ENUM_Q_LINKORIENTATION_nominal]</li> <li>• q_linkreaction Q_LINKREACTION:<br/>[TM_conversions::ENUM_Q_LINKREACTION_Train_trip  <br/>TM_conversions::ENUM_Q_LINKREACTION_Apply_service_brake  <br/>TM_conversions::ENUM_Q_LINKREACTION_No_Reaction]</li> <li>• q_locacc Q_LOCACC: (0-63)</li> </ul> <p><i>Only an output structure with the structured element "valid" set to "true" is to be considered as received. If this field is set to true, the Output 1 (received) must equally be set to "true".</i></p> |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary | n/a   |

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | <p>The component is prepared for the upcoming error/exception handling concept. An error flag is, at the moment, raised internally if any of the compressed input values is out of range. A hierarchical error processing is foreseen.</p> <p>The types that have been defined in the package S026_7 do not provide any default/ invalid value. The following fields are therefore set to an arbitrary value upon reception of an out-of-range value from track side, and the internal error flag is raised:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• q_dir Q_DIR:<br/>set to: Q_DIR_Both_directions</li> <li>• q_scale Q_SCALE:<br/>set to: ENUM_Q_SCALE_10cm</li> <li>• q_newcountry Q_NEWCOUNTRY:<br/>set to:[TM_conversions::ENUM_Q_NEWCOUNTRY_same   TM_conversions::ENUM_Q_NEWCOUNTRY_not_same]</li> <li>• q_newcountry Q_NEWCOUNTRY:<br/>set to: TM_conversions::ENUM_Q_NEWCOUNTRY_not_same</li> <li>• q_linkorientation Q_LINKORIENTATION:<br/>set to: TM_conversions::ENUM_Q_LINKORIENTATION_reverse</li> <li>• q_linkreaction Q_LINKREACTION:<br/>set to: TM_conversions::ENUM_Q_LINKREACTION_Train_trip</li> </ul> |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | n/a   |

---

<sup>135</sup> **4.1.3 Subcomponents**

<sup>136</sup> **4.1.3.1 Read\_Packets**

<sup>137</sup> **4.1.3.1.1 Component Requirements**

|                     |   |
|---------------------|---|
| Component name      | TM_lib_internal::RECV_ReadPackets   |
| Link to SCADE model | <a href="https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/ETCS_Messaging/TrackMessages">https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/ETCS_Messaging/TrackMessages</a> |
| SCADE designer      | Jakob Gärtner, LEA Railergy   |

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Description | <p>RECV_ReadPackets extracts packet data information and raw compressed packet data from the compressed packets data flow, using filter criteria provided through parameter inputs:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• NID_PACKET: search for a specific packet.</li> <li>• Version Number: search for a specific version number.</li> <li>• Q_DIR: search for packets that are only valid for a specific direction.</li> <li>• Serial number: search for a specific packet instance, if several instances of a given packet type exist.</li> <li>• F_Version: Flag to decide whether to evaluate or ignore packet version information.</li> <li>• F_id: Flag whether to evaluate or ignore packet serial number information.</li> </ul> |
|-------------|--|

The operator TM\_lib\_internal::RECV\_ReadPackets takes a set of parameter data to:

1. Search the metadata of the compressed packets data flow using the provided parameters to determine if a matching packet is contained in any given cycle.
2. Output the flag "received" exactly in any cycle a matching packet is found
3. Output an array of compressed packet data that is filled with the data from the identified packet.

|                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter 7<br>This function is not directly traceable to Subset-026, but is built from derived requirements.  |
| Safety integrity level | 4  |
| Time constraints       | n/a  |
| API requirements       | In the demonstrator context, the API is fully defined on SCADE model level. For integration with external systems (BTM, Radio, Subset-076 or Subset-94), additional conversion to/ from bit-level representation will be required. |

#### <sup>138</sup> 4.1.3.1.2 Interface

<sup>139</sup> For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.

#### <sup>141</sup> 4.1.3.2 Extract Packet 5

##### <sup>142</sup> 4.1.3.2.1 Component Requirements

|                |  |
|----------------|--|
| Component name | TM_conversions::trackside.C_P005_compr_onboard |
|----------------|--|

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| Link to SCADE model    | <a href="https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/ETCS_Messaging/TrackMessages">https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/<br/>System/ObuFunctions/ETCS_Messaging/TrackMessages</a>        |
| SCADE designer         | Jakob Gärtner, LEA Railergy   |
| Description            | If a matching packet 5 has been received, TM_conversions::trackside.C_P005_compr_onboard: takes the compressed packet data and converts them to an SRS conformal onboard packet format. Trailing 0 beyond the valid length of the packet are ignored. |
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter 7   |
| Safety integrity level | 4   |
| Time constraints       | n/a   |
| API requirements       | n/a   |

<sup>143</sup> **4.1.3.2.2 Interface**

<sup>144</sup> For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.  
<sup>145</sup>

## 5<sub>146</sub> F2: ETCS Kernel

<sub>147</sub> In this chapter we describe the main components of the openETCS OBU model. Section [5.1](#) gives  
<sub>148</sub> an overview of the external interfaces of this functional block and gives a brief overview of its  
<sub>149</sub> components and their interaction. The following Sections [5.2](#) to [5.14](#) give a detailed description  
<sub>150</sub> for each of the components in F2: ETCS Kernel.

### 5.1<sub>151</sub> ETCS Kernel Overview

<sub>152</sub> The ETCS Kernel module consists of the 13 functional components, i.e. F2.1 to F2.13 as depicted  
<sub>153</sub> in Figures [5](#) to [17](#). Note that due to the complexity of the Kernel module the SysML diagram has  
<sub>154</sub> been splitted into 13 figures. Each of the figures shows one of the subcomponents F2.1 to F2.13  
<sub>155</sub> and its connections to the other components in F2 and the inputs respectively outputs of F2. In  
<sub>156</sub> the following we briefly describe the functionality of these components.

<sub>157</sub> **F2.1: Manage\_TrackSideInformation\_Integration** This component is responsible for receiving  
<sub>158</sub> Eurobalise telegrams and Euroradio messages from the API and performs several consistency  
<sub>159</sub> checks on the inputs. The corresponding SysML diagram is shown in Figure [5](#). For further details we refer to Section [5.2](#).

<sub>161</sub> **F2.2: Manage\_ETCS\_Procedures** This component describes the Start of Mission procedure  
<sub>162</sub> of the train until the current status will change to another mode, level or other procedure.  
<sub>163</sub> The corresponding SysML diagram is shown in Figure [6](#). For further details we refer to Section [5.3](#).

<sub>165</sub> **F2.3: trainData** Implementation of the train data with the corresponding interfaces to track,  
<sub>166</sub> driver and RBC. The corresponding SysML diagram is shown in Figure [7](#). For further details we refer to Section [5.4](#).

<sub>168</sub> descriptions needs to be improved

<sub>169</sub> **F2.4: TrackAtlas** t.b.d. The corresponding SysML diagram is shown in Figure [8](#). For further details we refer to Section [5.5](#).

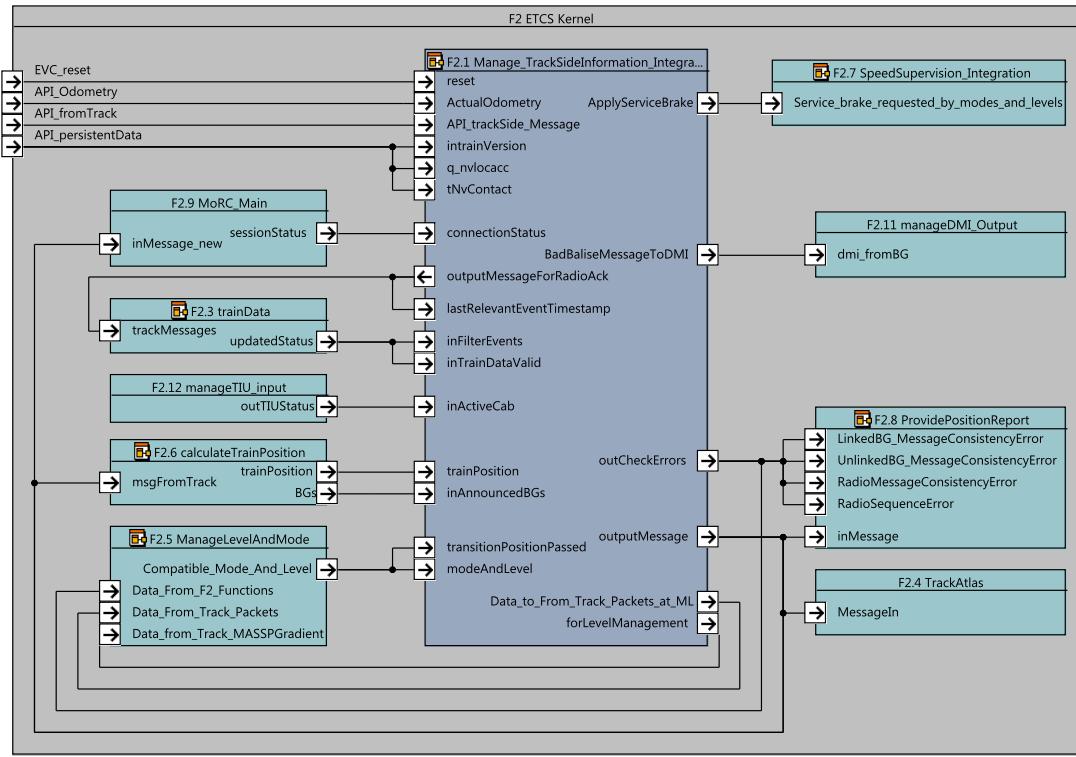
<sub>171</sub> to be completed

<sub>172</sub> **F2.5: Mode\_and\_Level** Defines the status of the ETCS regarding on-board functional status  
<sub>173</sub> and track infrastructure. The corresponding SysML diagram is shown in Figure [9](#). For further details we refer to Section [5.6](#).

<sub>175</sub> descriptions needs to be improved

<sub>176</sub> **F2.6: calculateTrainPosition** The purpose of this component is to calculate the locations of  
<sub>177</sub> linked and unlinked balise groups and the current train position while the train is running  
<sub>178</sub> along the track. The corresponding SysML diagram is shown in Figure [10](#). For further details we refer to Section [5.7](#).

<sub>180</sub> **F2.7: SpeedSupervision\_Integration** This component monitors the current speed of the train  
<sub>181</sub> and its location to ensure that the speed remains within the given speed and distance limits.  
<sub>182</sub> The corresponding SysML diagram is shown in Figure [11](#). For further details we refer to Section [5.8](#).



**Figure 5. F2: ETCS Kernel SysML diagram with focus on F2.1 Manage\_TrackSideInformation\_Integration component.**

184 **F2.8: Provide\_Position\_Report** The component builds a position report for the RBC, i.e.,  
 185 message 132, and provides it as an output. The corresponding SysML diagram is shown in  
 186 Figure 12. For further details we refer to Section 5.9.

187 **F2.9: Manage\_Radio\_Communication** This component implements the onboard management  
 188 of a single communication session with the track, i.e. a single RBC. It controls the estab-  
 189 lishment, maintenance and termination process of a radio communication session and steers  
 190 the underlying communication safety layer as well as the mobile device. Those and the data  
 191 transfer itself are not part of this component. The corresponding SysML diagram is shown in  
 192 Figure 13. For further details we refer to Section 5.10.

193 **F2.10: ManageDMIInput** This component handles messages respectively data coming from  
 194 the Driver Machine Interface (DMI) to the ETCS OBU. The corresponding SysML diagram  
 195 is shown in Figure 14. For further details we refer to Section 5.11.

196 **F2.11: ManageDMIOOutput** This component handles messages respectively data being send  
 197 from the ETCS OBU to the DMI. The corresponding SysML diagram is shown in Figure 15.  
 198 For further details we refer to Section 5.12.

199 **F2.12: ManageTIUInput** This component handles messages respectively data coming from  
 200 the Train Interface Unit (TIU) to the ETCS OBU. The corresponding SysML diagram is  
 201 shown in Figure 16. For further details we refer to Section 5.13.

202 **F2.13: ManageTIUOutput** This component handles messages respectively data being send  
 203 from the ETCS OBU to the TIU. The corresponding SysML diagram is shown in Figure 17.  
 204 For further details we refer to Section 5.14.

### 205 5.1.1 External Interfaces

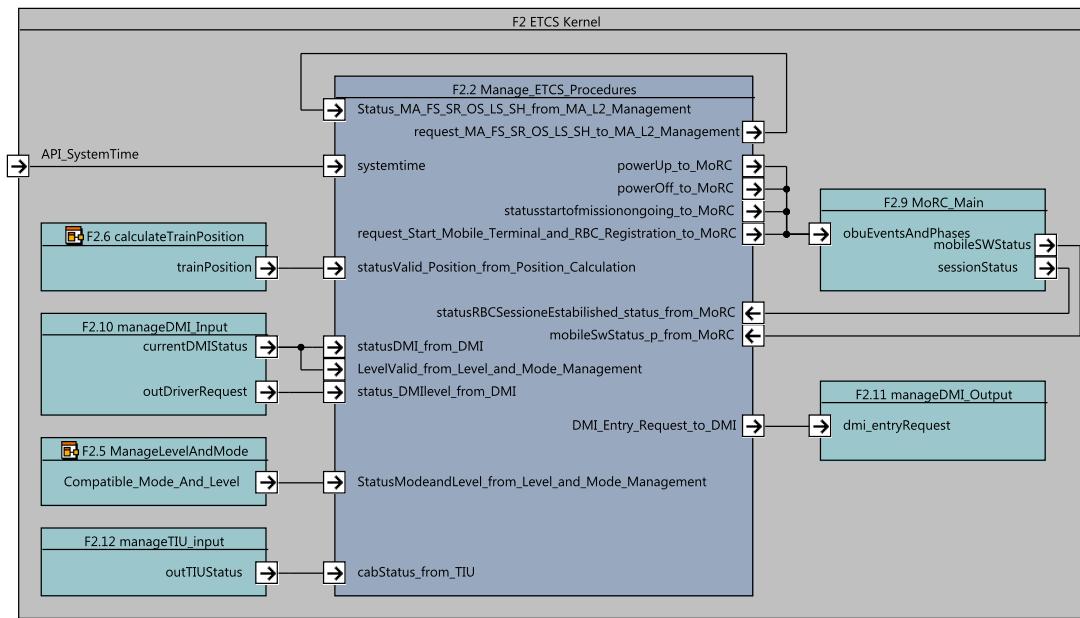


Figure 6. F2: ETCS Kernel SysML diagram with focus on F2.2 Manage\_ETCS\_Procedures component.

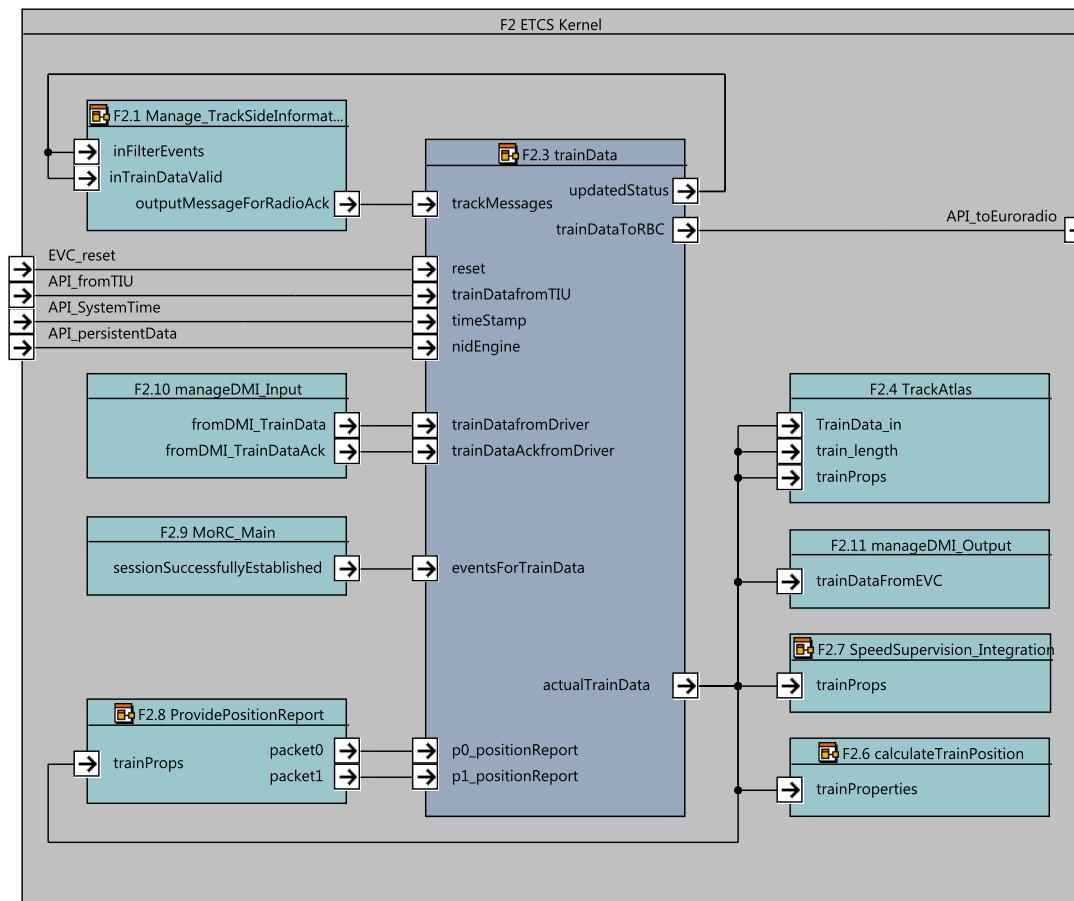


Figure 7. F2: ETCS Kernel SysML diagram with focus on F2.3 trainData component.

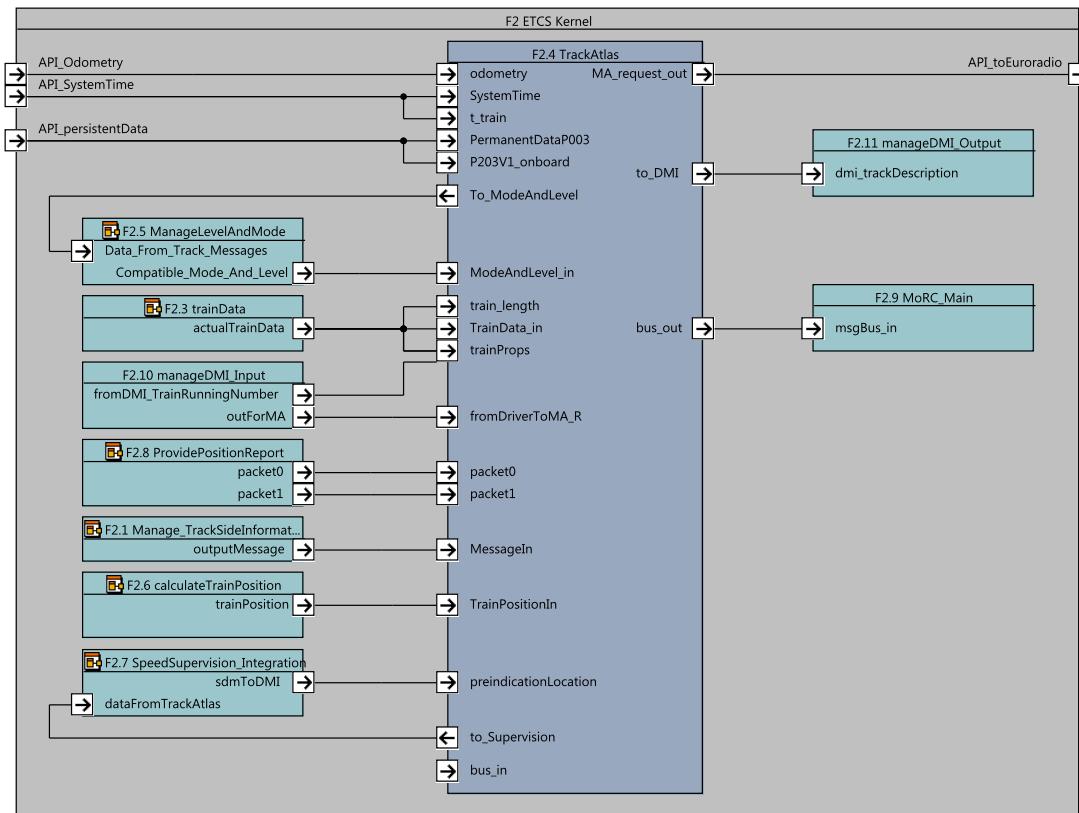


Figure 8. F2: ETCS Kernel SysML diagram with focus on F2.4 TrackAtlas component.

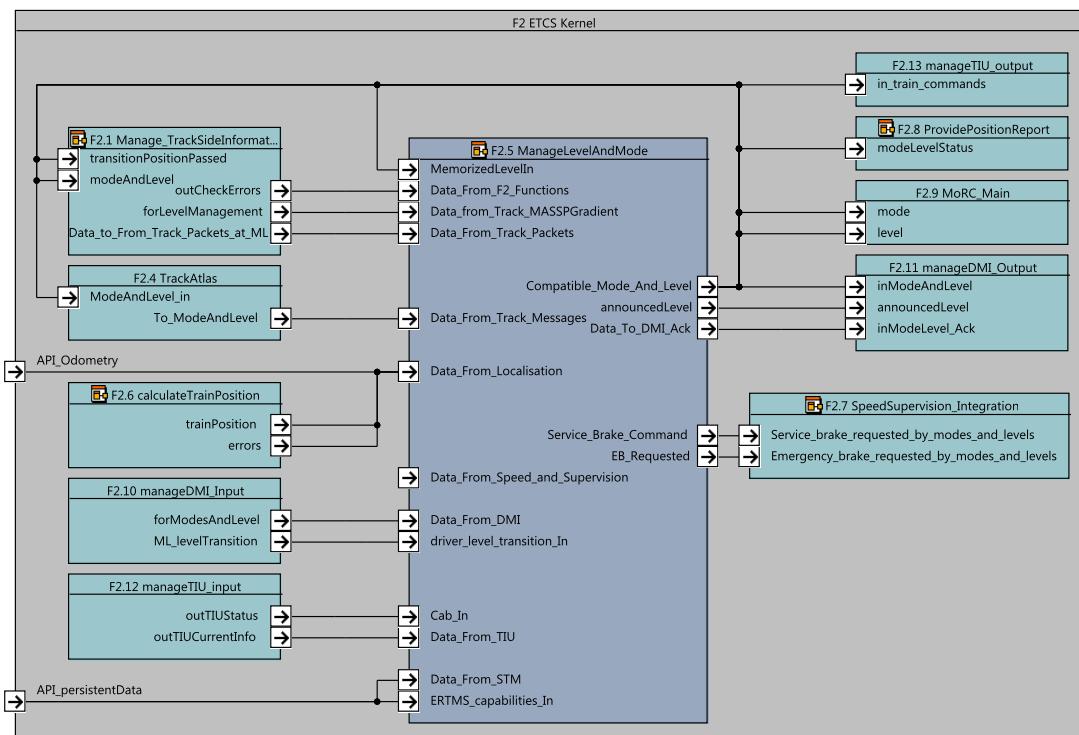


Figure 9. F2: ETCS Kernel SysML diagram with focus on F2.5 Mode\_and\_Level component.

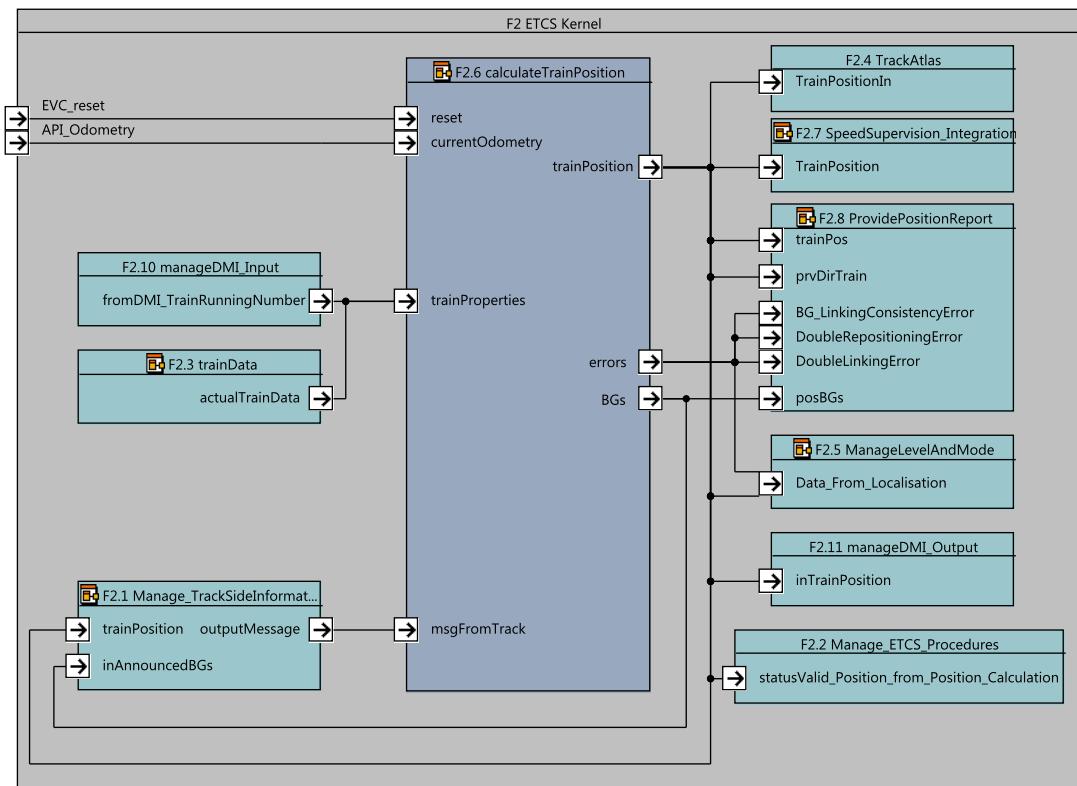


Figure 10. F2: ETCS Kernel SysML diagram with focus on F2.6 calculateTrainPosition component.

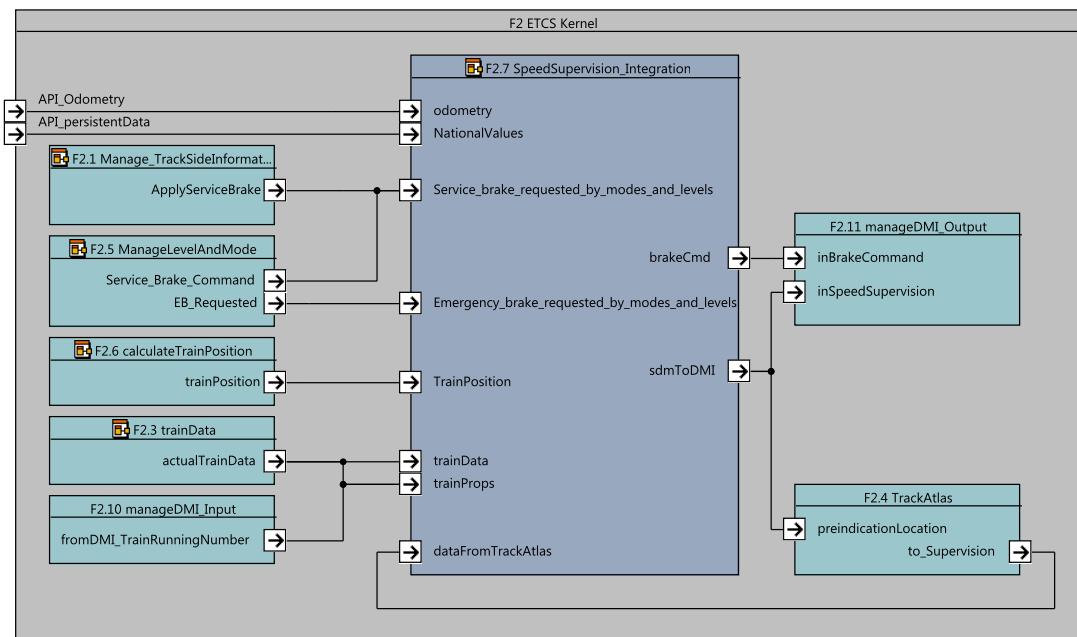
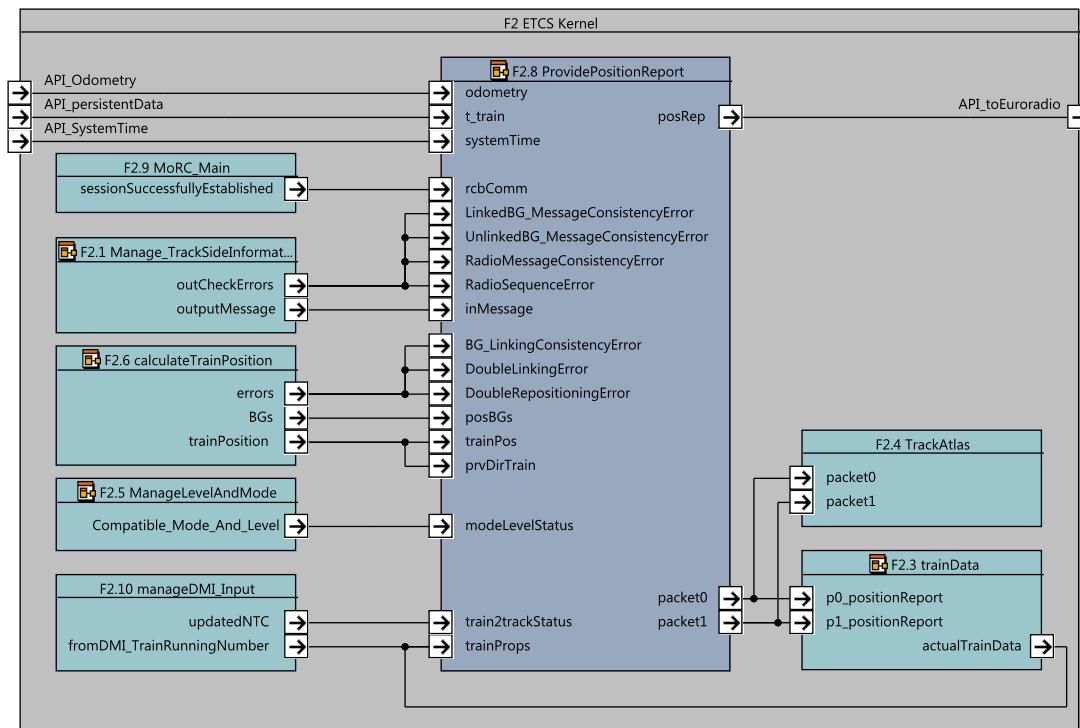
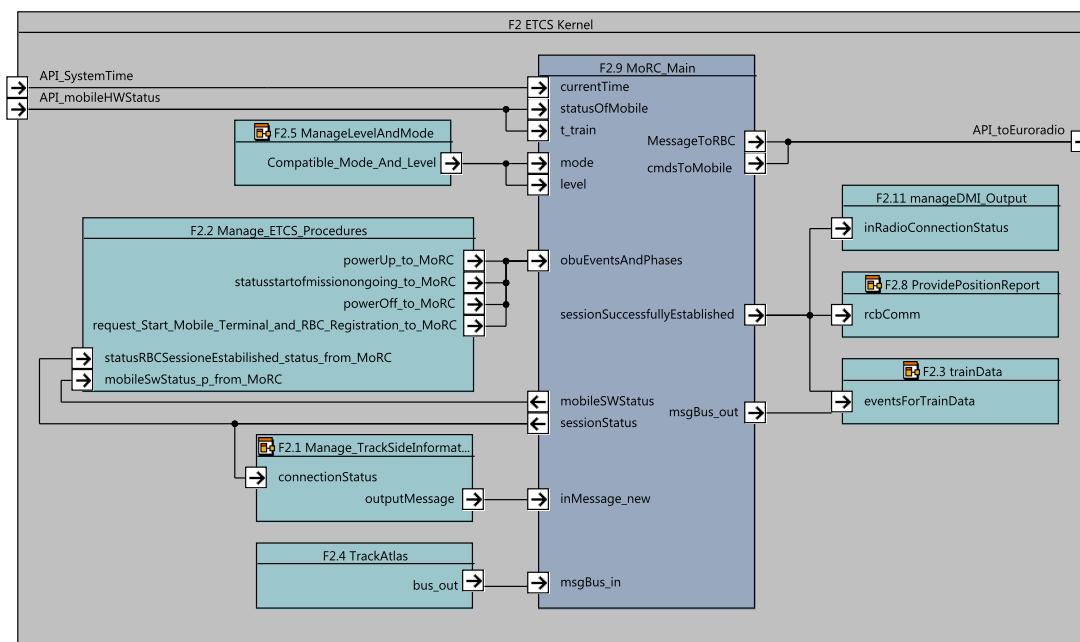


Figure 11. F2: ETCS Kernel SysML diagram with focus on F2.7 SpeedSupervision\_Integration component.



**Figure 12. F2: ETCS Kernel SysML diagram with focus on F2.8 Provide\_Position\_Report component.**



**Figure 13. F2: ETCS Kernel SysML diagram with focus on F2.9 Manage\_Radio\_Communication component.**

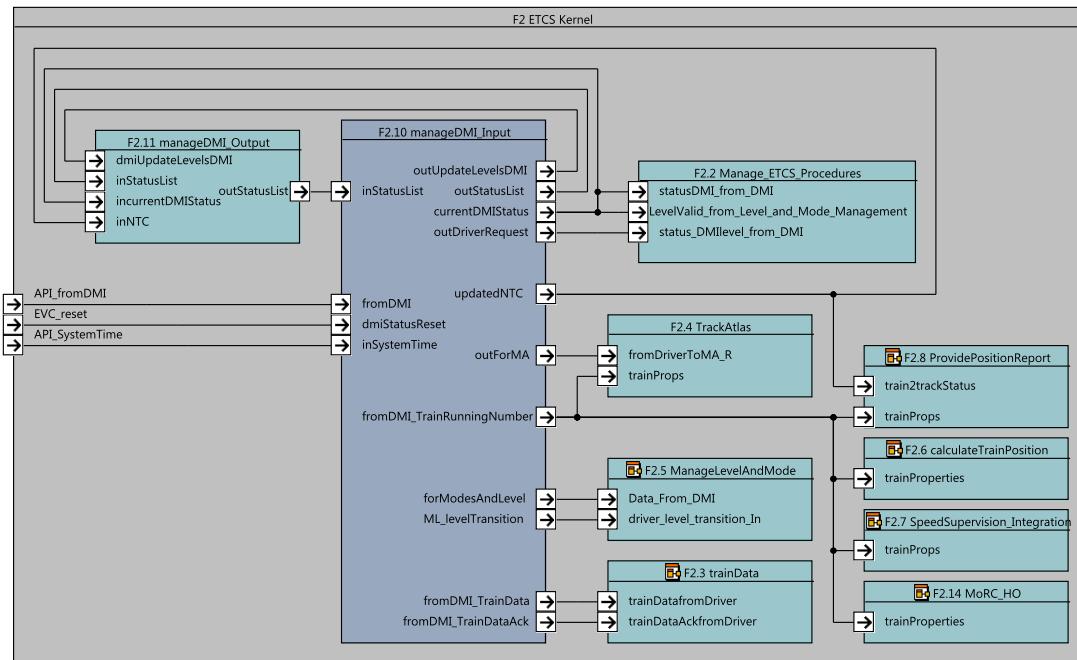


Figure 14. F2: ETCS Kernel SysML diagram with focus on F2.10 ManageDMIInput component.

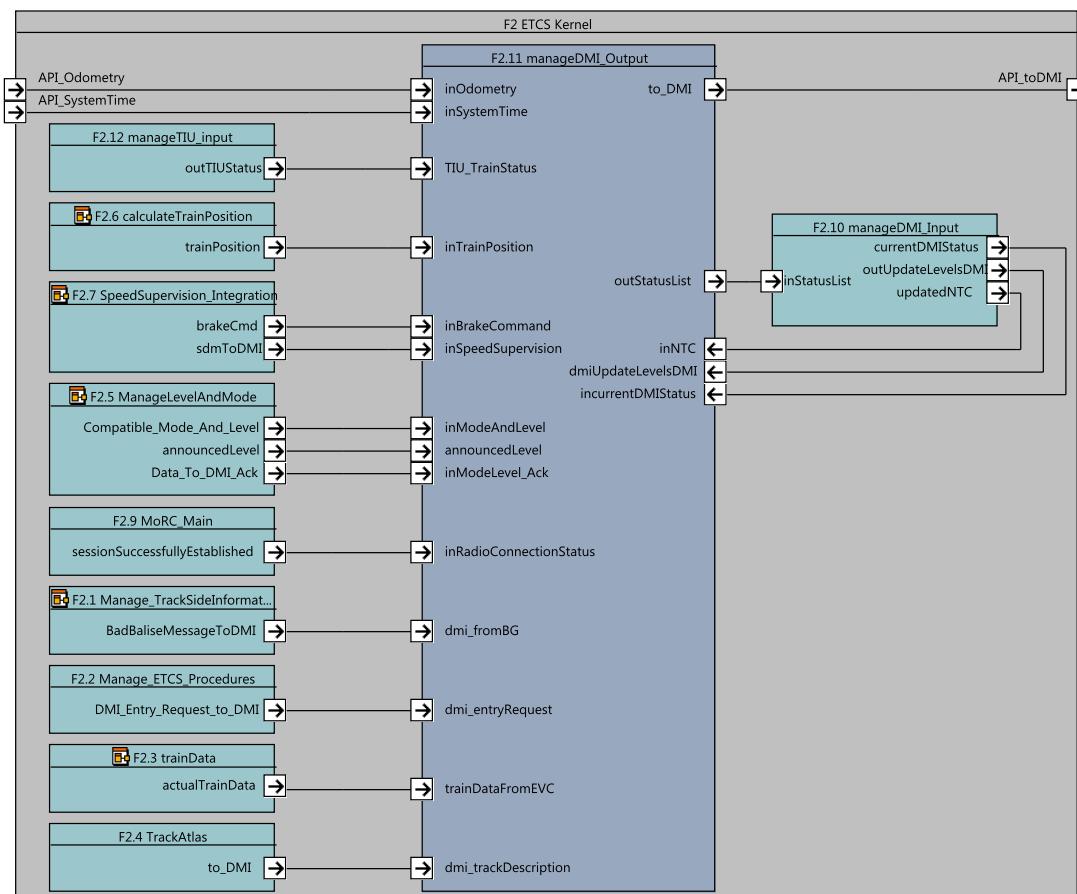


Figure 15. F2: ETCS Kernel SysML diagram with focus on F2.11 ManageDMIOOutput component.

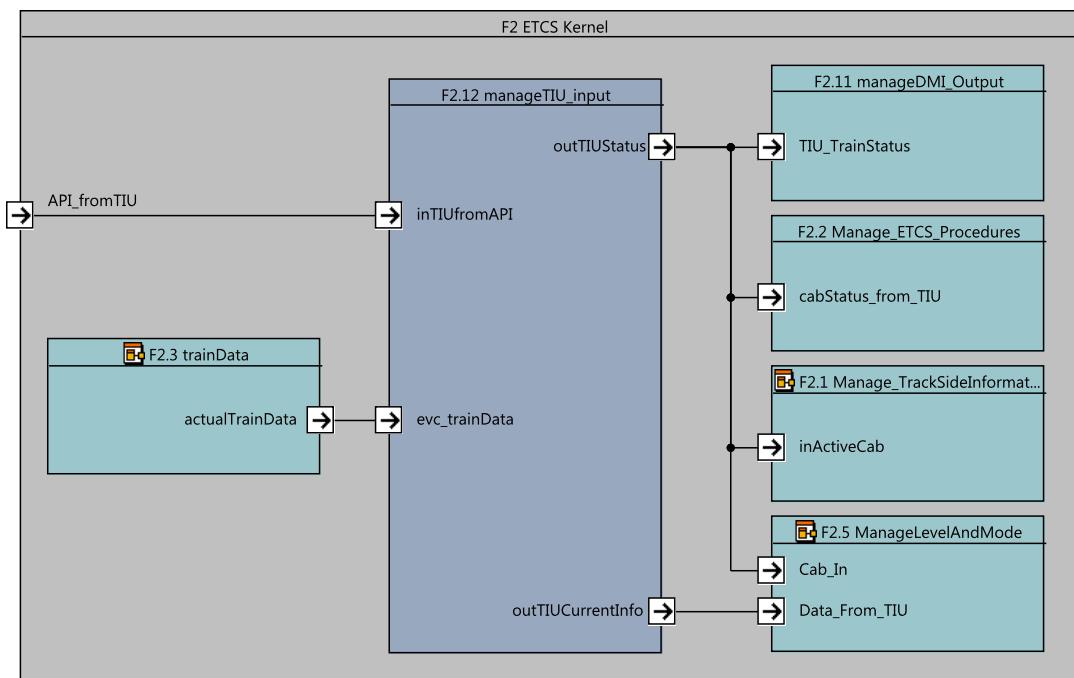


Figure 16. F2: ETCS Kernel SysML diagram with focus on F2.12 ManageTIUInput component.

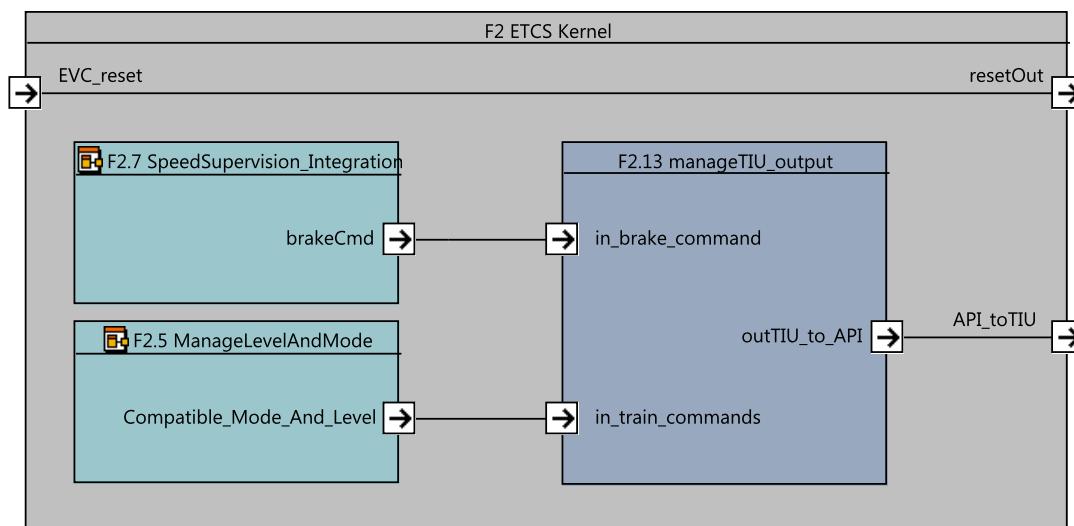


Figure 17. F2: ETCS Kernel SysML diagram with focus on F2.13 ManageTIUOutput component.

206 This section gives a detailed overview of the external inputs and outputs of module F2: ETCS  
 207 Kernel.

208 **5.1.1.1 External Inputs**

209 **5.1.1.1.1 EVC\_reset**

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Input name  | EVC_reset   |
| Description   | The reset input is used to delete all data stored in the connected components inside F2 (e.g. collected balise telegrams). If the input is set to true, all data kept in the components is deleted and no input is accepted. The reset option is to be used when the EVC is started or in system error scenarios. |
| Source  | [Name of the source component]  |
| Type  | [Type of the input]   |
| Valid range of values   | [Complete list of valid values]   |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | [Description of components behaviour when input value is at boundary]   |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | [Description of components behaviour when input value is out of valid range]  |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | [Description of components behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious)]   |

210 **5.1.1.1.2 API\_Odometry**

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Input name  | API_Odometry  |
| Description   | Odometry data provided by the external odometry module of the train.                              |
| Source  | API   |
| Type  | [Type of the input]   |
| Valid range of values   | [Complete list of valid values]   |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | [Description of components behaviour when input value is at boundary]                             |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | [Description of components behaviour when input value is out of valid range]                      |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | [Description of components behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious)] |

<sup>211</sup> **5.1.1.1.3 API\_SystemTime**

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Input name  | API_SystemTime  |
| Description   | [Brief description of the input]  |
| Source  | API   |
| Type  | [Type of the input]   |
| Valid range of values   | [Complete list of valid values]   |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | [Description of components behaviour when input value is at boundary]                             |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | [Description of components behaviour when input value is out of valid range]                      |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | [Description of components behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious)] |

<sup>212</sup> **5.1.1.1.4 API\_fromTrack**

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Input name  | API_fromTrack   |
| Description   | [Brief description of the input]  |
| Source  | API respectively F1 Receive Information from Trackside  |
| Type  | [Type of the input]   |
| Valid range of values   | [Complete list of valid values]   |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | [Description of components behaviour when input value is at boundary]                             |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | [Description of components behaviour when input value is out of valid range]                      |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | [Description of components behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious)] |

<sup>213</sup> **5.1.1.1.5 API\_fromDMI**

|             |                                    |
|-------------|------------------------------------|
| Input name  | API_fromDMI                        |
| Description | [Brief description of the input]   |
| Source      | API respectively F6 DMI Controller |
| Type        | [Type of the input]                |

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Valid range of values   | [Complete list of valid values]   |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | [Description of components behaviour when input value is at boundary]                             |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | [Description of components behaviour when input value is out of valid range]                      |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | [Description of components behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious)] |

<sup>214</sup> **5.1.1.1.6 API\_fromTIU**

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Input name  | API_fromTIU   |
| Description   | [Brief description of the input]  |
| Source  | API respectively F7 Manage TIU Interface  |
| Type  | [Type of the input]   |
| Valid range of values   | [Complete list of valid values]   |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | [Description of components behaviour when input value is at boundary]                             |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | [Description of components behaviour when input value is out of valid range]                      |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | [Description of components behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious)] |

<sup>215</sup> **5.1.1.1.7 API\_mobileHWStatus**

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Input name                              | API_mobileHWStatus   |
| Description                             | [Brief description of the input]   |
| Source                                  | [Name of the source component]   |
| Type                                    | [Type of the input]  |
| Valid range of values                   | [Complete list of valid values]  |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary     | [Description of components behaviour when input value is at boundary]        |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range | [Description of components behaviour when input value is out of valid range] |

---

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | [Description of components behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious)] |
|---|---|

---

<sup>216</sup> **5.1.1.1.8 API\_persistentData**

---

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Input name  | API_persistentData  |
| Description   | [Brief description of the input]  |
| Source  | [Name of the source component]  |
| Type  | [Type of the input]   |
| Valid range of values   | [Complete list of valid values]   |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | [Description of components behaviour when input value is at boundary]                             |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | [Description of components behaviour when input value is out of valid range]                      |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | [Description of components behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious)] |

---

<sup>217</sup> **5.1.1.2 External Outputs**

<sup>218</sup> **5.1.1.2.1 resetOut**

---

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Output name   | resetOut  |
| Description   | [Brief description of the output]   |
| Destination   | [Name of the destination component(s)]  |
| Type  | [Type of the output]  |
| Valid range of values   | [Complete list of valid values]   |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | [Description of components behaviour when output value is at boundary]                            |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | [Description of components behaviour when output value is out of valid range]                     |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | [Description of components behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious)] |

---

<sup>219</sup> **5.1.1.2.2 API\_toEuroradio**

---

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Output name   | API_toEuroradio   |
| Description   | [Brief description of the output]   |
| Destination   | [Name of the destination component(s)]  |
| Type  | [Type of the output]  |
| Valid range of values   | [Complete list of valid values]   |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | [Description of components behaviour when output value is at boundary]                            |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | [Description of components behaviour when output value is out of valid range]                     |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | [Description of components behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious)] |

---

<sup>220</sup> **5.1.1.2.3 API\_toDMI**

---

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Output name   | API_toDMI   |
| Description   | [Brief description of the output]   |
| Destination   | API respectively F6DMI Controller   |
| Type  | [Type of the output]  |
| Valid range of values   | [Complete list of valid values]   |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | [Description of components behaviour when output value is at boundary]                            |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | [Description of components behaviour when output value is out of valid range]                     |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | [Description of components behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious)] |

---

<sup>221</sup> **5.1.1.2.4 API\_toTIU**

---

|                       |  |
|-----------------------|--|
| Output name           | API_toTIU                                |
| Description           | [Brief description of the output]        |
| Destination           | API respectively F7 Manage TIU Interface |
| Type                  | [Type of the output]                     |
| Valid range of values | [Complete list of valid values]          |

---

---

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | [Description of components behaviour when output value is at boundary]                            |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | [Description of components behaviour when output value is out of valid range]                     |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | [Description of components behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious)] |

---

## 5.2<sub>222</sub> F2.1: Manage\_TrackSideInformation\_Integration

### 223 5.2.1 Component Requirements

---

|                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| Component name         | Manage_TrackSideInformation_Integration  |
| Link to SCADE model    | <a href="https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/blob/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/ManageLocationRelatedInformation/BaliseGroup/Manage_TrackSideInformation_Integration/Manage_TrackSideInformation_Integration.etp">https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/blob/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/ManageLocationRelatedInformation/BaliseGroup/Manage_TrackSideInformation_Integration/Manage_TrackSideInformation_Integration.etp</a>  |
| SCADE designer         | Bernd Hekele, DB Netz AG   |
| Description            | <p>The functional block “Manage_TrackSideInformation_Integration” is responsible for receiving Eurobalise telegrams and Euroradio messages from the API and performs several consistency checks on the inputs.</p> <p>The block collects the telegrams of balises in order to build balise group messages. Euroradio messages are always delivered as a whole message. On each message, a consistency check is performed, before the data is validated according to the driving direction of the train. In general, messages not designated for the current driving direction of the train are not forwarded for further processing. After applying consistency checks, the data direction is validated. Finally, the received message is handled in the InformationFilter subcomponent. The InformationFilter may, depending on level, mode and announced level transitions and radio handover scenarios, let information pass immediately, reject information, or buffer information for some cycles until certain conditions apply and the information will be passed. Information in this sense is packets in the context of messages.</p> |
| Input documents        | See subcomponents.   |
| Safety integrity level | 4  |
| Time constraints       | The component has to be able to receive balise telegrams and radio messages according to the ETCS performance requirements, c.f. [?]. In highspeed traffic, a group of 8 balises must be read in about 250 msec. In addition, 1 message per sec. on the radio interface is to be expected.   |

---

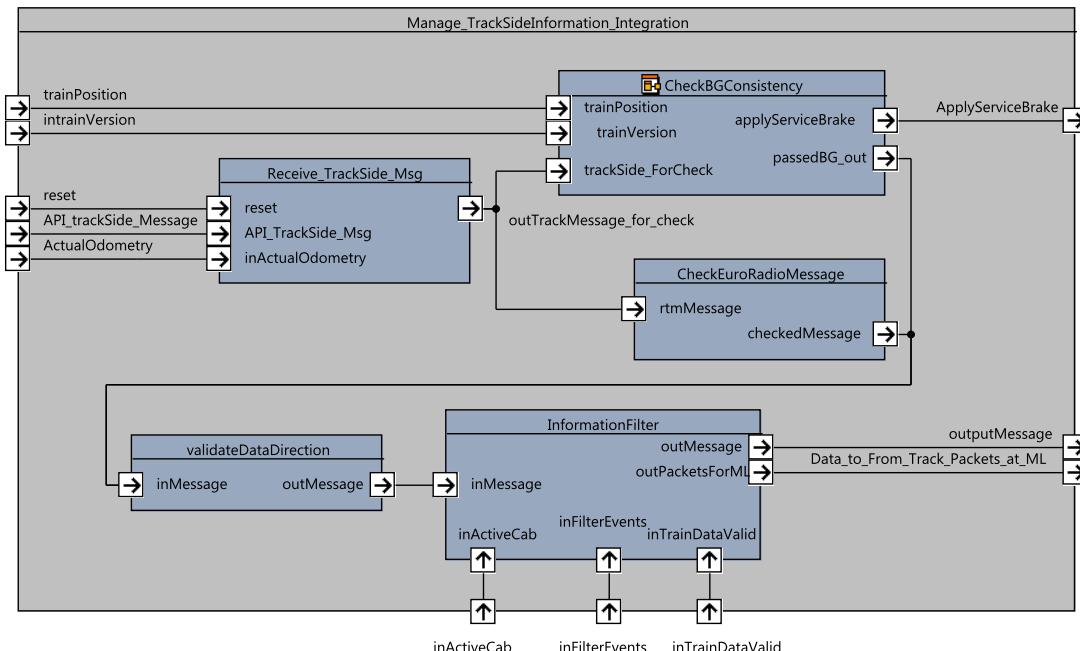
## API requirements

Interfaces to this unit are defined in the API sections [BTM], [EU-RORADIO], [ODO]. In these sections, also a detailed definition of the concepts implemented on those interfaces is documented.

reference sections correctly once these are completed

224 **5.2.2 Interface**

225 An overview of the interface of component Manage\_TrackSideInformation\_Integration is shown  
 226 in Figure 18. The inputs and outputs are described in detail in Section 5.2.2.1 respectively 5.2.2.2.  
 227 Subcomponents are described in Section 5.2.3.



**Figure 18. Manage\_TrackSideInformation\_Integration component SysML diagram.**

228 **5.2.2.1 Inputs**229 **5.2.2.1.1 fullChecks**

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Input name  | fullChecks   |
| Description | Indicates, if all checks on the message should be performed. This parameter is for testing purposes only and has to be replaced by a constant in real operation. |
| Source      | This item is only relevant in verification phases. In a real system checks are always activated.   |
| Type        | bool   |

Valid range of values

**true** All checks are performed.

**false** Component InformationFilter is deactivated.

Behaviour when value is n/a  
at boundary

Behaviour for values out n/a  
of valid range

Behaviour when value is n/a  
erroneous, absent or un-  
wanted (i.e. spurious)

230 **5.2.2.1.2 API\_trackSide\_Message**

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Input name  | API_trackSide_Message   |
| Description | Track side message received from the API. The API performs pre-processing of RTM and BTM messages and delivers a maximum of a single message per cycle. The structure of this message is defined in the API [BTM] and [EURORADIO] sections. The input consists of the following main components:<br><br><b>valid</b> (bool) Indicates the information has been refreshed in the cycle.<br><b>true</b> : Information is updated in this cycle.<br><b>false</b> : Information is unchanged. |

**systemTimeMsgReceived** (Obu\_BasicTypes\_Pkg::T\_internal\_Type):

Timestamp when the system (i.e. the train) has received the message. The parameter is set either by RTM or by BTM modules.

**msg\_type** (Common\_Types\_Pkg::MsgSource\_T) source of this information.

**msrc\_undefined** indicates the information is not defined. This input is expected when valid flag is false.

**msrc\_Euroradio** indicates the information is a euroradio message.

**msrc\_Eurobalise** indicates the information is a balise telegram.

Other values of this enumeration are not expected in this model.

**btm\_msg** (API\_Msg\_Pkg::API\_TelegramHeader\_T) Telegram header with some additional information provided by the btm-module. The header is structured as follows:

**present** (bool) Telegram information has been received via BTM and the information of this telegram is present.

**checkResult** (bool) The telegram is checked after reception at the BTM. Typical checks are checksum-tests or checks at conversion of the types from bit-layout to the presentation in the evc. If checkResult is false the information may not be used. The information is evaluated in the checkBGConsistency component of this model.

**api\_bad\_balise\_received** (bool) The telegram reception was disturbed. Again, the information related to this telegram may not be used in the EVC.

**api\_header** (API\_Msg\_Pkg::API\_TelegramHeader\_T) Header of the telegram similar to Subset 026, Section 8.4.2.1. The information in the telegram is not packed on bit-boundaries.

**centerOfBalisePosition** (BG\_Types\_Pkg::centerOfBalisePosition\_T) Location of the balise as determined by the antenna of the train. The information is extended with inaccuracies of the measurement given by the BTM.

**rtm\_msg** (API\_Msg\_Pkg::API\_RadioMsgHeader\_T) Radio message header with some additional information added by the RTM module. The information is structured as follows:

**present** (bool) Radio message has been received via rtm and the information of this message is present.

**apiConsistencyError** (bool) The message is checked after reception at the btm. Typical checks are checksum-tests or checks at conversion of the types from bit-layout to the presentation in the evc. If apiConsistencyError is false the information may not be used. The information is evaluated in the checkRadioMessage component of this model.

**Radio\_Common\_Header** (Radio\_Types\_Pkg::Radio\_TrackTrain\_Header\_T) Header of the radio-message as defined in Subset-026, Section 8.4.4.6.1. In the SRS, depending on the concrete message, some optional variables are defined. In our implementation all optional variables are foreseen. In order to indicate the availability of variables the component radioMetadata is used (see below).

**radioMetadata** (Common\_Types\_Pkg::RadioMetadata\_T) Metadata for optional variables in the common radio message header. For each optional component a presence indicator of type bool is in the list.

**sendingRBC\_Id** (Common\_Types\_Pkg::RBC\_Id\_T) Identifies the RBC as it is known at the RTM. Information is added to the interface in the RTM.

**packets** (Common\_Types\_Pkg::CompressedPackets\_T) Packets as received as a part of the telegram or radio message. The structure is set-up and can be accessed by library routines of the trackMessages component of the system. In the manage\_trackside\_Messages component packets may be changed to being absent (e.g., by the function validateDataDirection or by the InformationFilter.). If packets have to be treated only this valid indicator is changed. No other parts of the packets are accessed.

|                       |   |
|-----------------------|---|
| Source                | F2 input API_fromTrack  |
| Type                  | API_Msg_Pkg::API_TrackSideInput_T   |
| Valid range of values | Access to the information has to be guarded by the valid flag and similar flags deeper in the structure of the interface. Checks on individual values of message components, telegrams and packets are part of the decoding function. We assume information to be valid in this part of the system. |

Behaviour when value is n/a (structure)  
at boundary

Behaviour for values out n/a  
of valid range

Behaviour when value is n/a  
erroneous, absent or un-  
wanted (i.e. spurious)

<sup>231</sup> **5.2.2.1.3 ActualOdometry**

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Input name  | ActualOdometry   |
| Description   | Odometry data provided by the external odometry module of the train. It contains relative location information with inaccuracies. In this model only information related to the position of the train is used (ODO component). A valid flag of the odometer input indicates the hardware is working and the parameter may be used. |
| Source  | F2 input API_Odometry  |
| Type  | Obu_BasicTypes_Pkg::odometry_T   |
| Valid range of values   | From the ODO component the nominal position is used. No plausibility checks on the component are done. Any integer value is allowed.   |
| Behaviour when value is<br>at boundary  | Boundary value may lead to jump of the calculation in negative ranges. As a result the train may not be able to complete the reading of a balise group. In consequence, this results in a balise group error and in a service brake reaction of the train.   |
| Behaviour for values out<br>of valid range                                    | Same as description at boundary.   |
| Behaviour when value is<br>erroneous, absent or un-<br>wanted (i.e. spurious) | Same as description at boundary.   |

<sup>232</sup> **5.2.2.1.4 reset**

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Input name  | reset   |
| Description | The reset input is used to delete all data stored in the module (e.g. collected balise telegrams, which do not yet form a complete message). If the input is set to true, all data kept in the module is deleted and no input is accepted. The reset option is to be used when the EVC is started or in system error scenarios. |
| Source      | F2 input EVC_reset  |

---

Type                    bool

---

Valid range of values

**true** All data kept in the module is deleted and no input is accepted.

**false** No action. Data at input is accepted.

---

Behaviour when value is    n/a  
at boundary

---

Behaviour for values out    n/a  
of valid range

---

Behaviour when value is    n/a  
erroneous, absent or un-  
wanted (i.e. spurious)

---

<sup>233</sup> **5.2.2.1.5 trainPosition**

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Input name  | trainPosition   |
| Description   | Contains the current position of the train. This input is used for validation of the direction of packets and for checks of balise groups. Most important information in this input is the LRBG and the pre-vLRBG component. This identifies the last two balise group passed by the train. |
| Source  | F2.6 calculateTrainPosition   |
| Type  | TrainPosition_Types_Pck::trainPosition_T  |
| Valid range of values   | A valid flag is used in this input to indicate data is provided correctly.  |
| Behaviour when value is n/a at boundary                               | n/a   |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | n/a   |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | n/a   |

<sup>234</sup> **5.2.2.1.6 modeAndLevel**

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Input name  | modeAndLevel   |
| Description   | Provides the current level and mode of the EVC. Mode and Level are used by the InformationFilter subcomponent. |
| Source  | F2.5 ManageLevelAndMode  |
| Type  | BG_Types_Pkg::ModeAndLevelStatus_T   |
| Valid range of values   | n/a  |
| Behaviour when value is n/a at boundary                               | n/a  |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | n/a  |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | n/a  |

<sup>235</sup> **5.2.2.1.7 tNvContact**

|            |            |
|------------|------------|
| Input name | tNvContact |
|------------|------------|

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Description   | For monitoring the safe radio connection, this national value is needed as an input. This parameter is used in the radioCheck component of this model. |
| Source  | F2 input API_persistentData  |
| Type  | Obu_BasicTypes_Pkg::T_internal_Type  |
| Valid range of values   | Positive integer.  |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | When boundary is reached the input will jump to 0.   |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | If negative, this parameter will result in a radio message sequence error. Connection to the rbc will be closed.                                       |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | See above.   |

<sup>236</sup> **5.2.2.1.8 intrainVersion**

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Input name  | intrainVersion   |
| Description   | For monitoring the safe radio connection, this national value is needed as an input. This parameter is used in the radioCheck component of this model. |
| Source  | F2 input API_persistentData  |
| Type  | M_VERSION  |
| Valid range of values   | Enumerated values.   |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | Value check will reject radio message resp. balise telegram. In the consequence train will stop respectively the session will be rejected.             |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | Value check will reject radio message resp. balise telegram. In the consequence train will stop respectively the session will be rejected.             |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | See above.   |

<sup>237</sup> **5.2.2.1.9 lastRelevantEventTimestamp**

|            |                            |
|------------|----------------------------|
| Input name | lastRelevantEventTimestamp |
|------------|----------------------------|

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Description   | For monitoring the safe radio connection, it is necessary that the time between two packets is less than the value of T_NVCONTACT. In situations like level changes or announced radio holes, not the timestamp of the last message is relevant for comparison, but the timestamp of the last relevant event. This can for example be the timestamp of the level change or the timestamp of the moment, when the train was passing the end of the radiohole.<br>For performing this check, the timestamp of the last relevant event is provided to the model as an T_internal_Type-type. |
| Source  | F2.1 Manage_TracksidesInformation_Integration  |
| Type  | Obu_BasicTypes_Pkg::T_internal_Type  |
| Valid range of values   | Positive integer.  |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | Once the largest possible timestamp is exceeded, the next timestamps will start from 0 again. This may result in calculations of durations with negative result. As a consequence, the train will react with the loss of the communication session.  |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | See above.   |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | See above.   |

<sup>238</sup> **5.2.2.1.10 connectionStatus**

|                                     |   |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| Input name                          | connectionStatus  |
| Description                         | Status information about the radio connection. The information is needed to perform the timing check, which depends on the connection state in the radioCheck component.  |
| Source                              | F2.9 MoRC_Main  |
| Type                                | Radio_Types_Pkg::sessionStatus_Type   |
| Valid range of values               | <p><b>DISCONNECTED</b> The OBU is currently not connected to a RBC.</p> <p><b>CONNECTING</b> The OBU is currently connecting to the RBC.<br/>Received messages belong to the process of establishing a connection.</p> <p><b>CONNECTION_ESTABLISHED</b> The connection to the RBC is established.</p> |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary | n/a   |

Behaviour for values out of valid range n/a

Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) n/a

<sup>239</sup> **5.2.2.1.11 inSupervisingRbcId**

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Input name  | inSupervisingRbcId  |
| Description   | For the InformationFilter subcomponent, the information which radio messages are sent by the supervising RBC is needed. To recognize these messages, the identifier of the supervising RBC is needed. |
| Source  | F2.9 MoRC_Main  |
| Type  | int   |
| Valid range of values   | 0, 1, 2   |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | n/a   |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | Is interpreted as non valid radio connection.   |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | Is interpreted as non valid radio connection.   |

<sup>240</sup> **5.2.2.1.12 inAnnouncedBGs**

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Input name                              | inAnnouncedBGs  |
| Description                             | Provides information about balise groups as known in the EVC. This information is generated by the CalculateTrainPosition component based on the linking information received from track side and on the balise groups passed by the train. |
| Source                                  | F2.6 calculateTrainPosition   |
| Type                                    | TrainPosition_Types_Pck::positionedBGs_T  |
| Valid range of values                   | Each balise group entry is identified by an valid flag.   |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary     | n/a   |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range | n/a   |

Behaviour when value is n/a  
erroneous, absent or un-  
wanted (i.e. spurious)

---

<sup>241</sup> **5.2.2.1.13 q\_nvlocacc**

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Input name  | q_nvlocacc  |
| Description   | This national value determines the location accuracy. Needed as input for checkBGConsistency. |
| Source  | F2 input API_persistentData   |
| Type  | Q_NVLOCACC  |
| Valid range of values   | Integers in the range 0, ..., 63  |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | No impact.  |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | Will result in wrong calculation of inaccuracy of the train.                                  |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | See above.  |

---

<sup>242</sup> **5.2.2.1.14 inActiveCab**

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Input name  | inActiveCab  |
| Description   | Indicates the cab is active. This input is used by the InformationFilter subcomponent. |
| Source  | F2.12 manageTIU_input  |
| Type  | bool   |
| Valid range of values   | <p><b>true</b> Cab is active.<br/><b>false</b> Cab is inactive.</p>                    |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | n/a  |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | n/a  |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | n/a  |

---

---

### <sup>243</sup> 5.2.2.1.15 inTrainDataValid

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Input name   | inTrainDataValid   |
| Description  | Indicates train data have been validated by the RBC. This input is used by the InformationFilter subcomponent. |
| Source   | F2.3 trainData   |
| Type   | bool   |
| Valid range of values  |  |
| <p><b>true</b> Train data has been validated.</p> <p><b>false</b> Train data has not been validated.</p> |  |
| Behaviour when value is n/a at boundary  |  |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range  |  |
| Behaviour when value is n/a erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious)                                |  |

---

### <sup>244</sup> 5.2.2.1.16 inFilterEvents

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Input name  | inFilterEvents  |
| Description | A set of events needed for controlling the InformationFilter subcomponent. For details see valid range of values row in this table. |
| Source      | F2.3 trainData  |
| Type        | Common_Types_Pkg::filterRelatedEvents_T   |

---

|                       |  |
|-----------------------|--|
| Valid range of values | This input is a complex structure consisting out of the following components:<br><br><b>pendingL1Transition</b> (bool) Indicates if an announced LEVEL 1 transition is present. Used for Level filter exception [1]. The information is indicating the status. Note: this indication can be evaluated based on information available in the Information-Filter. The input is not used from outside the main component Manage_TrackSide_Information.<br><br><b>pendingL2L3Transition</b> (bool) Indicates if an announced LEVEL 2 or Level 3 transition is present. Used for Level Filter exception [2]. The information is indicating the status. Note: this indication can be evaluated based on information available in the InformationFilter. The input is not used from outside the main component Manage_TrackSide_Information.<br><br><b>pendingAckOfTrainDataFromRBC</b> (bool) Indicates if the acknowledgement of train data is pending. Used for Level filter exception [3].<br><br><b>emergencyStopAccepted</b> (bool): Indicate if the train performs an emergency brake. Used for Level filter exception [5].<br><br><b>lastAckTextMessageId</b> (int) The ID of the last acknowledged text message ID. Used for Level filter exception [12]. The SRS requires text messages to restrict from double sending to the DMI when handled in the filter. This function is currently not implemented.<br><br><b>pendingNTCTransition</b> (bool) Indication if an announced LEVEL NTC transition is present. Used for Level filter exception [6,7].<br><br><b>SPPAndGradientOnBoard</b> (bool) Speed Profile and Gradient Profile received and available on board. This information may be part of the actual incoming message.<br><br><b>MACoverNotFullLength</b> (bool) MA does not cover full length of the trip. Information from trackAtlas. |
|-----------------------|--|

---

Behaviour when value is n/a  
at boundary

---

Behaviour for values out of valid range

---

Behaviour when value is n/a  
erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious)

---

245 **5.2.2.1.17 transitionPositionPassed**

---

|            |                          |
|------------|--------------------------|
| Input name | transitionPositionPassed |
|------------|--------------------------|

---

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Description   | The position of the requested level transition has been passed. This information is used by InformationFilter subcomponent to clean data after level management reactions. |
| Source  | F2.5 ManageLevelAndMode  |
| Type  | bool   |
| Valid range of values   | <p><b>true</b> The position of the requested level transition has been passed.</p> <p><b>false</b> The position of the requested level transition has not been passed.</p> |
| Behaviour when value is n/a at boundary                               | n/a  |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | n/a  |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | n/a  |

<sup>246</sup> **5.2.2.2 Outputs**

<sup>247</sup> **5.2.2.2.1 outputMessage**

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Output name | outputMessage  |
| Description | Combines both balise and radio messages to one common datatype. This datatype contains all variables and packets, which are possible for the given scenario. In each cycle at most one valid message is put to the output. The InformationFilter subcomponent might take the last processed one or a message from stack - depending on the information stored and on the status of the evc. The component consists of the following building blocks: |
|             | <b>valid</b> Information about the status of this message.   |
|             | <b>true</b> The information is valid, a new message is now visible at the output. The valid flag (and the message as such) will only be present for one cycle.   |
|             | <b>false</b> No valid message is available.  |

**source** (Common\_Types\_Pkg::MsgSource\_T) Source of this information.

**msrc\_undefined** Indicates the information is not defined. This input is expected when valid flag is false.

**msrc\_Euroradio** Indicates the information is a euroradio message.

**msrc\_Eurobalise** Indicates the information is a balise telegram.

Other values of this enumeration are not expected in this model.

**radioMetadata** (Common\_Types\_Pkg::RadioMetadata\_T) Metadata for optional variables in the common radio message header. For each optional component a presence indicator of type bool is in the list.

**BG\_Common\_Header** (BG\_Types\_Pkg::BG\_Header\_T) Balise group message header with some additional information. This header collects information from the balise telegram headers together with the location and orientation of the balise group related to the driving direction.

**Radio\_Common\_Header** (Radio\_Types\_Pkg::Radio\_TrackTrain\_Header\_T) Radio message header with some additional information added by the RTM module. Variables of messages which are not present in all messages are available in the header, but controlled by the radio metadata.

**packets** (Common\_Types\_Pkg::CompressedPackets\_T) Packets as received as a part of the telegram or radio message. The structure is set-up and can be accessed by library routines of the trackMessages component of the system. In the manage\_trackside\_Messages component packets may be changed to being absent (e.g., by the function validateDataDirection or by the InformationFilter.). If packets have to be treated only this valid indicator is changed. No other parts of the packets are changed.

---

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Destination                             | F2.4 TrackAtlas<br>F2.6 calculateTrainPosition<br>F2.8 ProvidePositionReport<br>F2.9 MoRC_Main |
| Type                                    | Common_Types_Pkg::ReceivedMessage_T  |
| Valid range of values                   | n/a  |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary     | n/a  |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range | n/a  |

---

---

Behaviour when value is n/a  
erroneous, absent or un-  
wanted (i.e. spurious)

---

<sup>248</sup> **5.2.2.2.2 ApplyServiceBrake**

|                       |   |
|-----------------------|---|
| Output name           | ApplyServiceBrake   |
| Description           | Indicates if the balise group the train just passed could not be processed correctly. The check results in the request for a service break. |
| Destination           | F2.7 SpeedSupervision_Integration   |
| Type                  | bool  |
| Valid range of values | <p><b>true</b> Request for service break.<br/> <b>false</b> No request for service break.</p>   |

---

Behaviour when value is n/a  
at boundary

---

Behaviour for values out n/a  
of valid range

---

Behaviour when value is n/a  
erroneous, absent or un-  
wanted (i.e. spurious)

---

<sup>249</sup> **5.2.2.2.3 BadBaliseMessageToDMI**

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Output name                                | BadBaliseMessageToDMI  |
| Description                                | Information to be passed to the DMI to indicate the reception of a “bad balise” to the driver.   |
| Destination                                | F2.11 manageDMI_output   |
| Type                                       | bool   |
| Valid range of values                      | <p><b>true</b> Reception of “bad balise” should be indicated to the driver.<br/> <b>false</b> Reception of “bad balise” should not be indicated to the driver.</p> |
| Behaviour when value is n/a<br>at boundary |  |

---

Behaviour for values out of valid range n/a

Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) n/a

250 **5.2.2.2.4 outCheckErrors**

|                       |   |
|-----------------------|---|
| Output name           | outCheckErrors  |
| Description           | Error flags for errors found during the message check procedures. For details see valid range of values row of this table.  |
| Destination           | F2.5 ManageModeAndLevel<br>F2.8 ProvidePositionReport   |
| Type                  | Common_Types_Pkg::MSG_Errors_T  |
| Valid range of values | <p>This output is a complex structure mainly consisting out of boolean values. The boolean variables are set true if an error in the particular parameter has been detected and false otherwise.</p> <p><b>linkedBGError</b> (bool) Reported by checkBGConsistency. Error in a linked BGH - Message has been detected.</p> <p><b>unlinkedBGError</b> (bool) Reported by checkBGConsistency. Error in an unlinked BGH - Message has been detected.</p> <p><b>BG_versionIncompatible</b> (bool) Reported by checkBGConsistency. Version of received Balises is not compliant with the train. Balises cannot be used.</p> <p><b>radioSequenceError</b> (bool) Reported by checkEuroRadioMessage. The sequence of messages in the input channel is not correct. This check is based in t_train of the incoming radio messages.</p> <p><b>tNvContactError</b> (bool) Reported by checkEuroRadioMessage. The time for receiving the next radio message has been exceeded. This indicates lost radio messages.</p> <p><b>otherTimingError</b> (bool) Reported by checkEuroRadioMessage. Other timing errors.</p> <p><b>radioMessageConsistencyError</b> (bool) Reported by checkEuroRadioMessage. Inconsistencies in the contents of radio messages have been detected.</p> <p><b>nid_c</b> (NID_C) Reported by checkBGConsistency. If known id of the erroneous balise group.</p> <p><b>nid_errorbg</b> (NID_ERRORRBG) Reported by checkBGConsistency. If known id of the erroneous balise group.</p> |

Behaviour when value is at boundary n/a

---

Behaviour for values out of valid range n/a

---

Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) n/a

---

<sup>251</sup> **5.2.2.2.5 forLevelManagement**

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Output name | forLevelManagement  |
| Description | <p>The InformationFilter subcomponent has to provide information to the EVC components according to the actual level and radio state. In order to trigger the level change level management needs to know about availability of track profiles and other components in order to select the correct mode and level. This output provides information relevant to trigger level transitions. The data will be accumulated in the InformationFilter until the position for the level change has been reached. The output structure consists of the following components:</p> <p><b>P41</b> (Packet_Types_Pkg::P41_LevelTransistionOrders_T) Packet 41 (level transition order).</p> <p><b>P46</b> (Packet_Types_Pkg::P46_LevelTransistionOrders_T) Packet 46 (conditional level transition order).</p> <p><b>LRBG</b> (NID_LRBG) Reference LRBG for the level transition order..</p> <p><b>referenceLocation</b> (Obu_BasicTypes_Pkg::L_internal_Type) Location of the reference LRBG. This location has to be used as reference for calculating the level transition position.</p> <p><b>P12_received</b> (bool) Packet 12 (Level 1 Movement Authority) has been received at the InfomationFilter subcomponent in the context of this level transition.</p> <p><b>P15_received</b> (bool) Packet 15 (Level 2/3 Movement Authority) has been received at the InfomationFilter subcomponent in the context of this level transition.</p> <p><b>P21_received</b> (bool) Packet 21 Gradient Profile) has been received at the InfomationFilter subcomponent in the context of this level transition.</p> <p><b>P27_received</b> (bool) Packet 27 (International Static Speed Profile) has been received at the InfomationFilter subcomponent in the context of this level transition.</p> |
| Destination | F2.5 ModesAndLevels   |
| Type        | Level_And_Mode_Types_Pkg::T_Data_From_TrackForLevelChange   |

Valid range of values

**true** An error in a unlinked balise group was detected.

**false** No error in a unlinked balise group was detected.

Behaviour when value is n/a  
at boundary

Behaviour for values out n/a  
of valid range

Behaviour when value is n/a  
erroneous, absent or un-  
wanted (i.e. spurious)

252 **5.2.2.6 outputMessageForRadioAck**

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Output name   | outputMessageForRadioAck  |
| Description   | Even if an incoming radio message is rejected or kept for some time in the buffer of the InformationFilter subcomponent, some information needs to be made available for maintaining the communication session with the RBC, e.g., the timestamp of the received message and acknowledgment of message reception based on the ACK flag. No other information of this message is to be used in the EVC. This concept might be improved when radio management functions are rearranged. |
| Destination   | F2.3 trainData  |
| Type  | Common_Types_Pkg::ReceivedMessage_T   |
| Valid range of values   |   |
| <b>true</b> An error in a unlinked balise group was detected.                     |   |
| <b>false</b> No error in a unlinked balise group was detected.                    |   |
| Behaviour when value is n/a<br>at boundary  |   |
| Behaviour for values out n/a<br>of valid range                                    |   |
| Behaviour when value is n/a<br>erroneous, absent or un-<br>wanted (i.e. spurious) |   |

253 **5.2.3 Subcomponents**

254 **5.2.3.1 Receive\_TrackSide\_Msg**

255    **5.2.3.1.1 Component Requirements**

|                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| Component name         | Receive_TrackSide_Msg  |
| Link to SCADE model    | <a href="https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/ManageLocationRelatedInformation/BaliseGroup/Receive_TrackSide_Msg">https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/ManageLocationRelatedInformation/BaliseGroup/Receive_TrackSide_Msg</a>  |
| SCADE designer         | Bernd Hekele, DB Netz AG   |
| Description            | <p>This function defines the interface of the OBU model to the openETCS generic API for Eurobalise and Euroradio messages. On the interface, either a valid telegram/message is provided or a telegram/message is indicated which could not be received correct when passing the balise or receiving the radio message. The function passes a balise telegram without major changes of the information to the next entity for collecting the balise group information. This entity collects telegrams received via the interface into Balise Group Information. In case of a radio message, the message is converted to an internal format for further processing and passed without changing the information contained.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The decoding of balises is done at the API. Also, packets received via the interface are already transformed into a usable shape.</li> <li>• Only packets used inside the current model are passed via the interface.</li> <li>• Treatment of Packet 5: Linking Information. Linking Information is added to the linking array starting from index 0 without gaps. Used elements are marked as valid. Elements are sorted according to the order given by the telegram sequence.</li> <li>• Telegrams received as invalid are passed to the “Check-Function” to process errors in communication with the track side according to the requirements and in a single place. Telegrams are added to the telegram array starting from index 0 without gaps. Used elements are marked as valid. Elements are stored according to the order given by the telegram sequence.</li> <li>• This function does not process information from the packets. The information is passed to the check without further processing of the values.</li> </ul> |
| Input documents        | <p>Subset-026, Chapter 7 and 8: Definition of the Balise Telegram<br/>     Subset-026, Chapter 4.2.2, 4.2.4, 4.2.9: Interface to the BTM<br/>     Subset-026, Chapter 3.4.1 - 3.4.3, 3.16.2: Handling of Balise Telegrams<br/>     Subset-026, Chapter 3.16.2: Check of the balise group<br/>     Subset-026, Chapter 3.4.2: Determining the orientation<br/>     Subset-026, Chapter 4.5.2: Active Functions Table<br/>     Subset-026, Chapter 8.4.4: Rules for Euroradio messages</p>   |
| Safety integrity level | 4  |

---

|                  |     |
|------------------|-----|
| Time constraints | n/a |
| API requirements | n/a |

---

256 **5.2.3.1.2 Interface**

257 For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link  
258 above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.

259 **5.2.3.2 CheckBGConsistency**

260 **5.2.3.2.1 Component Requirements**

---

|                     |   |
|---------------------|---|
| Component name      | CheckBGConsistency  |
| Link to SCADE model | <a href="https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/ManageLocationRelatedInformation/BaliseGroup/CheckBGConsistency">https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/ManageLocationRelatedInformation/BaliseGroup/CheckBGConsistency</a>   |
| SCADE designer      | Peyman Farhangi, DB Netz AG   |
| Description         | <p>The function "Receive_TrackSide_Msg" collects the telegrams in an array. If one or more telegrams are received multiple times, either the whole the array or single telegram should be deleted.(e.g.if the train moves back.) The balises in a group are to be expected in a certain distance from each other. The function "Receive_TrackSide_Msg" checks if the telegrams has been received in due time and at the right expected location.</p> <p>The function "CheckBGConsistency" verifies the completeness and correctness of the received telegrams from balise groups and composes the balise message from the received telegram array (input from "Receive_TrackSide_Msg"). A balise message is built from at least one telegram and a maximum of 8 telegrams. When linking information is used on-board, only balise groups marked as linked and included in the linking information and balise groups marked as unlinked shall be taken into account.</p> |

- A message is still complete and correct, if a telegram is missing (or not decoded or incompletely decoded), and this telegram is duplicated within the balise group and the duplicating one is correctly read.
- In case of multiple balises, the order of the balises must be either ascending (nominal) or descending (reverse).
- A message is not correct, if a message counters (M\_MCOUNT) equals 254 (that means: The telegram never fits any message of the group). A message counter can equal 255 (that means: The telegram fits with all telegrams of the same balise group) and all other values must be the same.

The orientation of the BG and the running direction of the train are calculated in this block. When linking information is used on-board, the check, if the message of linked balise group has been received in due time and at the expected location, will be performed in "Calculate Train Position". The checks on the validity of the data in the packets and the validity with respect to the direction of motion will be performed in other modules, e.g. "ValidateDataDirection".

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter 7 and 8: Definition of the Balise Telegram<br>Subset-026, Chapter 3.4.1-3, 3.16.2: Handling of Balise Telegrams<br>Subset-026, Chapter 3.16.2: Check of the balise group<br>Subset-026, Chapter 4.5.2: Active Functions Table |
| Safety integrity level | 4   |
| Time constraints       | n/a   |
| API requirements       | n/a   |

### 261 5.2.3.2.2 Interface

262 For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link  
263 above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.

### 264 5.2.3.3 CheckEuroradioMessage

#### 265 5.2.3.3.1 Component Requirements

|                     |   |
|---------------------|---|
| Component name      | CheckEuroradioMessage   |
| Link to SCADE model | <a href="https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/b9c31ce6fdf702b412bbeab3032a8a4dc7c92e5c/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/ManageLocationRelatedInformation/BaliseGroup/CheckEuroRadioMessage">https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/b9c31ce6fdf702b412bbeab3032a8a4dc7c92e5c/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/ManageLocationRelatedInformation/BaliseGroup/CheckEuroRadioMessage</a> |
| SCADE designer      | Stefan Karg, LEA Railergy   |

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| Description            | <p>The component “CheckEuroradioMessage” performs consistency and timing checks on the received radio message. These checks are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Checking the message sequence.</li> <li>• Check if the message violates timing constraints (T_NVCONTACT).</li> <li>• Check if all mandatory elements are included.</li> <li>• Check if no elements are included, which are forbidden for the given message id.</li> </ul> <p>Messages, which violate one or more of these criteria are marked as invalid in the message header and the component signals the reason for the invalidation via different flags as described in the SCADE model.</p> |
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter 3.16<br>Subset-026, Chapter 8.4.4   |
| Safety integrity level | 4   |
| Time constraints       | n/a   |
| API requirements       | n/a   |

<sup>266</sup> **5.2.3.3.2 Interface**

<sup>267</sup> For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.

<sup>269</sup> **5.2.3.4 ValidateDataDirection**

<sup>270</sup> **5.2.3.4.1 Component Requirements**

|                     |   |
|---------------------|---|
| Component name      | ValidateDataDirection   |
| Link to SCADE model | <a href="https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/ManageLocationRelatedInformation/BaliseGroup/ValidateDataDirection">https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/ManageLocationRelatedInformation/BaliseGroup/ValidateDataDirection</a> |
| SCADE designer      | Stefan Karg, LEA Railergy   |
| Description         | The component filters an input message in order to mark all elements as invalid, which are not designated for the current driving direction of the train.   |

- The operator contains two processing paths for different message types. Radio messages and balise group messages are handled in a different way. For validating the data direction of a radio message, the check is performed using the balise group referenced in the radio message header as relevant balise group. For balise group message, the LRBG is used.
- The metadata of packets, which are recognized as not valid for the current driving direction, is invalidated.

|                        |                           |
|------------------------|---------------------------|
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter 3.6.3 |
| Safety integrity level | 4                         |
| Time constraints       | n/a                       |
| API requirements       | n/a                       |

<sup>271</sup> **5.2.3.4.2 Interface**

<sup>272</sup> For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link  
<sup>273</sup> above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.

<sup>274</sup> **5.2.3.5 InformationFilter**

<sup>275</sup> **5.2.3.5.1 Component Requirements**

Information filter component description needs to be checked, i.e. is the description still up to date? Should more documentation provided for this component in the ADD (please check with Bernd Hekele)?

|                     |   |
|---------------------|---|
| Component name      | InformationFilter   |
| Link to SCADE model | <a href="https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/ManageLocationRelatedInformation/BaliseGroup/InformationFilter">https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/ManageLocationRelatedInformation/BaliseGroup/InformationFilter</a> |
| SCADE designer      | Christian Stahl, TWT<br>Alexander Stante, FhG   |

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Description | <p>The filter receives track information (balise and radio) and filters them depending of the mode, level and source of the message. Only messages that pass the filter are valid and should be considered by other ETCS subsystems. The filter consists of four subcomponents: FirstFilter, SecondFilter, ThirdFilter and TransitionBuffer.</p> <p><b>FirstFilter</b> This filter performs filtering of messages based on the current ETCS level. The decisions taken process is described via a big decision table which contains rows for every packet and columns for every ETCS level. This table encodes also if certain additional information is necessary to filter a message like pending ETCS Level transitions. Based on this filter packets of an incoming message is either rejected, accepted or the whole message is put in the TransitionBuffer. Messages are put in the TransitionBuffer if there is an announced level transition and the received message is only valid for the upcoming level.</p> <p><b>SecondFilter</b> The SecondFilter mainly considers messages that are received via Euroradio. Certain messages are directly rejected while other may be stored in the TransitionBuffer. The buffer is used to store messages that are received from non supervising RBCs, but will be reevaluated after a RBC transition.</p> <p><b>ThirdFilter</b> The last filter is functionally very similar the the FirstFilter, however it filters depending on the mode. It also contains a decision table with rows for every packet but the columns are modes.</p> <p><b>TransitionBuffer</b> The InformationFilter uses two TransitionBuffers. One is used to store up to three messages for the ETCS level transition and the other buffer is used for RBC transitions. The buffer is designed as a ring buffer and message are read in FIFO order.</p> |
|-------------|---|

|                        |                         |
|------------------------|-------------------------|
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter 4.8 |
| Safety integrity level | 4                       |
| Time constraints       | n/a                     |
| API requirements       | n/a                     |

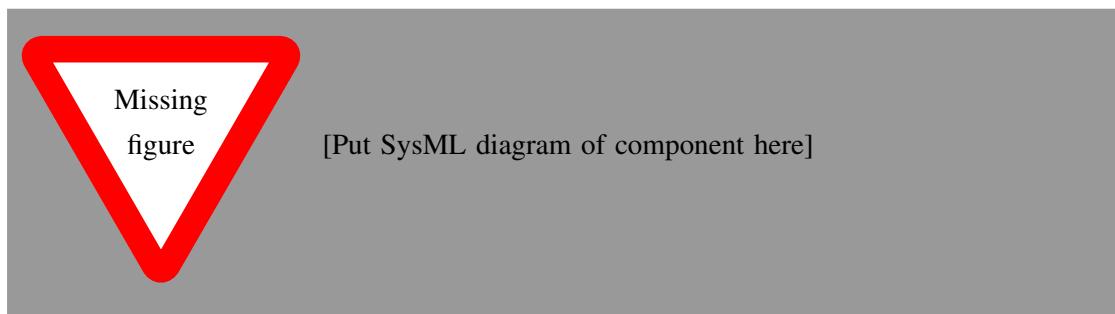
### <sup>277</sup> 5.2.3.5.2 Interface

<sup>278</sup> For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.

## <sup>280</sup> 5.3 F2.2: Manage\_ETCS\_Procedures

Section has to be completed

### <sup>282</sup> 5.3.1 Component Requirements



**Figure 19. Manage\_ETCS\_Procedures component SysML diagram**

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| Component name         | Manage_ETCS_Procedures  |
| Link to SCADE model    | <a href="https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/Procedures">https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/Procedures</a> |
| SCADE designer         | Baseliyos Jacob, DB Netz AG   |
| Description            | This function describes the Start of Mission procedure of the train until the current status will change to another mode, level or other procedure.   |
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter 5.4   |
| Safety integrity level | 4   |
| Time constraints       | n/a   |
| API requirements       | n/a   |

### 283 5.3.2 Interface

284 An overview of the interface of component Manage\_ETCS\_Procedures is shown in Figure 19.  
 285 The inputs and outputs are described in detail in Section 5.3.2.1 respectively 5.3.2.2. Subcompo-  
 286 nents are described in Section 5.3.3.

#### 287 5.3.2.1 Inputs

##### 288 5.3.2.1.1 statusDMI\_from\_DMI

|                       |   |
|-----------------------|---|
| Input name            | statusDMI_from_DMI                        |
| Description           | Input interface of DMI Controller status. |
| Source                | F2.10 manageDMI_input                     |
| Type                  | DMI_Types_Pkg::DMI_EVC_status_T           |
| Valid range of values | To be completed                           |

---

Behaviour when value is n/a  
at boundary

---

Behaviour for values out of valid range Function will not be triggered.

---

Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) Function will not be triggered.

---

<sup>289</sup> **5.3.2.1.2 Status\_MA\_FS\_SR\_OS\_LS\_SH\_from\_MA\_L2\_Management**

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Input name  | Status_MA_FS_SR_OS_LS_SH_from_MA_L2_Management               |
| Description | Status of MA, Mode and Level from Level and Mode Management. |
| Source      | F2.2 Manage_ETCS_Procedures                                  |
| Type        | bool   |

---

Valid range of values

**true** Movement Authority for Level 2 FS is valid

**false** Movement Authority for Level 2 FS is not valid

---

Behaviour when value is n/a  
at boundary

---

Behaviour for values out of valid range n/a

---

Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) n/a

---

<sup>290</sup> **5.3.2.1.3 systemtime**

|                                     |  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| Input name                          | systemtime   |
| Description                         | Standardized system time used for all internal calculations. |
| Source                              | F2 input API_Systemtime                                      |
| Type                                | Obu_BasicTypes_Pkg::T_internal_Type                          |
| Valid range of values               | [0, maximum positive int value of target platform]           |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary | System time is assumed to be valid.                          |

---

|   |                                     |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| Behaviour for values out<br>of valid range                                    | System time is assumed to be valid. |
| Behaviour when value is<br>erroneous, absent or un-<br>wanted (i.e. spurious) | System time is assumed to be valid. |

#### **291 5.3.2.1.4 StatusModeandLevel\_from\_Level\_and\_Mode\_Management**

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Input name  | StatusModeandLevel_from_Level_and_Mode_Management |
| Description | Status of Mode and Level.                         |
| Source      | F2.10 ManageLevelAndMode                          |
| Type        | Level_And_Mode_Types_Pkg::T_Mode_Level            |

## Valid range of values

To be completed

Behaviour when value is at boundary

To be completed

Behaviour for values out  
of valid range

To be completed

Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious)

To be completed

### **5.3.2.1.5 mobileSwStatus\_p\_from\_MoRC**

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Input name  | mobileSwStatus_p_from_MoRC   |
| Description | Information about SW status from Management of Radio Communication function. |
| Source      | F2.9 MoRC_Main   |
| Type        | MoRC_Pck::mobileSWStatus_Type  |

### Behaviour when value is at boundary

### To be completed

---

Behaviour for values out  
of valid range

To be completed

---

Behaviour when value is  
erroneous, absent or un-  
wanted (i.e. spurious)

To be completed

<sup>293</sup> **5.3.2.1.6 statusRBCSessionEstablished\_status\_from\_MoRC**

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Input name  | statusRBCSessionEstablished_status_from_MoRC  |
| Description | Information about RBC Session status from the Management of Radio Communication function. |
| Source      | F2.9 MoRC_Main  |
| Type        | Radio_Types_Pkg::sessionStatus_Type   |

---

Valid range of values

To be completed

---

Behaviour when value is  
at boundary

To be completed

---

Behaviour for values out  
of valid range

To be completed

---

Behaviour when value is  
erroneous, absent or un-  
wanted (i.e. spurious)

To be completed

<sup>294</sup> **5.3.2.1.7 cabStatus\_from\_TIU**

|                       |   |
|-----------------------|---|
| Input name            | cabStatus_from_TIU  |
| Description           | Information about cab desk status from Train Interface Unit function. |
| Source                | F2.12 manageTIU_input   |
| Type                  | TIU_Types_Pkg::TIU_trainStatus_T                                      |
| Valid range of values | To be completed   |

---

Behaviour when value is  
at boundary

To be completed

---

Behaviour for values out  
of valid range

To be completed

---

Behaviour when value is  
erroneous, absent or un-  
wanted (i.e. spurious)

To be completed

<sup>295</sup> **5.3.2.1.8 statusValid\_Position\_from\_Position\_Calculation**

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Input name  | statusValid_Position_from_Position_Calculation                       |
| Description | Information about validity status of the train position calculation. |
| Source      | F2.6 calculateTrainPosition  |
| Type        | bool   |

Valid range of values

**true** Calculated train position is valid.

**false** Calculated train position is not valid.

---

Behaviour when value is n/a  
at boundary

---

Behaviour for values out n/a  
of valid range

---

Behaviour when value is n/a  
erroneous, absent or un-  
wanted (i.e. spurious)

<sup>296</sup> **5.3.2.1.9 status\_DMIlevel\_from\_DMI**

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Input name  | status_DMIlevel_from_DMI   |
| Description | Information about the status of DMI menu and level request from<br>DMIController function. |
| Source      | F2.10 manageDMI_input  |
| Type        | DMI_Messages_DMI_to_EVC_Pkg::DMI_Driver_Request_T  |

Valid range of values

To be completed

Behaviour when value is at boundary

To be completed

Behaviour for values out of valid range

To be completed

Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious)

To be completed

<sup>297</sup> **5.3.2.1.10 LevelValid\_from\_Level\_and\_Mode\_Management**

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Input name  | LevelValid_from_Level_and_Mode_Management   |
| Description | Information about the validity status of the StatusModeandLevel_from_Level_and_Mode_Management input. |
| Source      | F2.5 ManageModeAndLevel   |
| Type        | bool  |

Valid range of values

**true** Level and Mode information are valid.

**false** Level and Mode information are not valid.

Behaviour when value is n/a  
at boundary

Behaviour for values out n/a  
of valid range

Behaviour when value is n/a  
erroneous, absent or un-  
wanted (i.e. spurious)

<sup>298</sup> **5.3.2.2 Outputs**

<sup>299</sup> **5.3.2.2.1 DMI\_Entry\_Request\_to\_DMI**

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Output name | DMI_Entry_Request_to_DMI                       |
| Description | Information about input request to the driver. |

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Destination   | F2.11 manageDMI_output                           |
| Type  | DMI_Messages_EVC_to_DMI_Pkg::DMI_Entry_Request_T |
| Valid range of values   | To be completed                                  |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | To be completed                                  |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | To be completed                                  |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | To be completed                                  |

300 **5.3.2.2.2 request\_Start\_Mobile\_Terminal\_and\_RBC\_Registration\_to\_MoRC**

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Output name   | request_Start_Mobile_Terminal_and_RBC_Registration_to_MoRC  |
| Description   | This output is a trigger to start the mobile terminal and RBC session registration within the Management of Radio Communication function. |
| Destination   | F2.9 MoRC_Main  |
| Type  | Common_Types_Pkg::radioManagementMessage_T  |
| Valid range of values   | To be completed   |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | To be completed   |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | To be completed   |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | To be completed   |

301 **5.3.2.2.3 powerUp\_to\_MoRC**

---

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Output name   | powerUp_to_MoRC  |
| Description   | This output is the trigger to activate the Management of Radio Communication function. |
| Destination   | F2.9 MoRC_Main   |
| Type  | bool   |
| Valid range of values   |  |
| <p><b>true</b> MoRC will be activated.</p> <p><b>false</b> No action.</p> |  |
| Behaviour when value is n/a at boundary                                   |  |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                                   |  |
| Behaviour when value is n/a erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) |  |

---

302 **5.3.2.2.4 statusstartofmissionongoing\_to\_MoRC**

---

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Output name  | statusstartofmissionongoing_to_MoRC  |
| Description  | This output gives the information about the start of mission status procedure to the Management of Radio Communication function. |
| Destination  | F2.9 MoRC_Main   |
| Type   | bool   |
| Valid range of values  |  |
| <p><b>true</b> Start of mission procedure is currently ongoing.</p> <p><b>false</b> Start of mission procedure is currently not ongoing.</p> |  |
| Behaviour when value is n/a at boundary  |  |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range  |  |
| Behaviour when value is n/a erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious)  |  |

---

<sup>303</sup> **5.3.2.2.5 powerOff\_to\_MoRC**

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Output name | powerOff_to_MoRC  |
| Description | This output is the trigger to de-activate the Management of Radio Communication function. |
| Destination | F2.9 MoRC_Main  |
| Type        | bool  |

Valid range of values

**true** MoRC will be deactivated.

**false** no action.

---

Behaviour when value is n/a  
at boundary

---

Behaviour for values out n/a  
of valid range

---

Behaviour when value is n/a  
erroneous, absent or un-  
wanted (i.e. spurious)

<sup>304</sup> **5.3.2.2.6 start\_ack\_to\_TIU**

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Output name | start_ack_to_TIU  |
| Description | This output indicates that the start of mission procedure is completed. |
| Destination | Output is currently not used in the model.                              |
| Type        | bool  |

Valid range of values

**true** Start of mission procedure is completed.

**false** Not defined.

Can we state "start of mission not completed" in case of "false" here?

---

Behaviour when value is n/a  
at boundary

---

Behaviour for values out n/a  
of valid range

---

Behaviour when value is n/a  
erroneous, absent or un-  
wanted (i.e. spurious)

305 **5.3.3 Subcomponents**

306 **5.3.3.1 Awakness\_of\_Train**

307 **5.3.3.1.1 Component Requirements**

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| Component name         | Awakness_of_Train   |
| Link to SCADE model    | <a href="https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/blob/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/Procedures/ManageProcedure_Pkg.xscade">https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/blob/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/Procedures/ManageProcedure_Pkg.xscade</a> |
| SCADE designer         | Baseliyos Jacob, DB Netz AG   |
| Description            | This component describes the Start of Mission procedure of the train until the status of the awakening is completed. From this point on the train will be able to switch to further modes, levels and procedures.   |
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter 5, § 5.4  |
| Safety integrity level | 4   |
| Time constraints       | n/a   |
| API requirements       | n/a   |

308 **5.3.3.1.2 Interface**

309 For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link  
 310 above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.

311 **5.3.3.2 NP**

312 **5.3.3.2.1 Component Requirements**

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| Component name         | NP  |
| Link to SCADE model    | <a href="https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/blob/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/Procedures/ManageProcedure_Pkg.xscade">https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/blob/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/Procedures/ManageProcedure_Pkg.xscade</a> |
| SCADE designer         | Baseliyos Jacob, DB Netz AG   |
| Description            | This component implements the No Power status of the train before the driver opens the cab desk.  |
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter 5, § 5.4  |
| Safety integrity level | 4   |
| Time constraints       | n/a   |
| API requirements       | n/a   |

313 **5.3.3.2.2 Interface**

314 For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link  
 315 above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.

316 **5.3.3.3 SoM\_L2\_3\_FS\_SR\_OS\_LS\_SH**

317 **5.3.3.3.1 Component Requirements**

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| Component name         | SoM_L2_3_FS_SR_OS_LS_SH   |
| Link to SCADE model    | <a href="https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/blob/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/Procedures/ManageProcedure_Pkg.xscade">https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/blob/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/Procedures/ManageProcedure_Pkg.xscade</a> |
| SCADE designer         | Baseliyos Jacob, DB Netz AG   |
| Description            | This component switch to Level 2 or 3 and Mode FS, SR, OS, LS and SH after completion of the awakening of the train.  |
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter 5, § 5.4  |
| Safety integrity level | 4   |
| Time constraints       | n/a   |
| API requirements       | n/a   |

318 **5.3.3.3.2 Interface**

319 For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link  
 320 above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.

321 **5.3.3.4 SoM\_NTC\_SN**

322 **5.3.3.4.1 Component Requirements**

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| Component name         | SoM_NTC_SN  |
| Link to SCADE model    | <a href="https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/blob/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/Procedures/ManageProcedure_Pkg.xscade">https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/blob/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/Procedures/ManageProcedure_Pkg.xscade</a> |
| SCADE designer         | Baseliyos Jacob, DB Netz AG   |
| Description            | This component switch to Level NTC and Mode SN after completion of the awakening of the train.  |
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter 5, § 5.4  |
| Safety integrity level | 4   |
| Time constraints       | n/a   |
| API requirements       | n/a   |

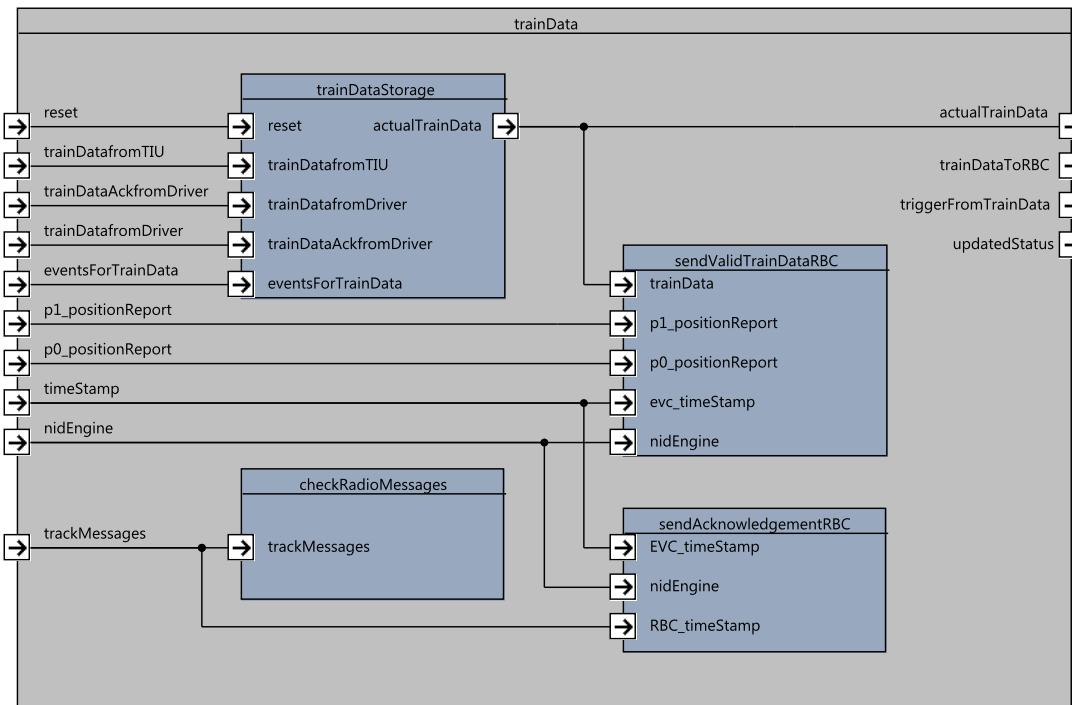
323 **5.3.3.4.2 Interface**

324 For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link  
 325 above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.

**5.4<sub>326</sub> F2.3: trainData**

327 **5.4.1 Component Requirements**

|                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| Component name         | trainData  |
| Link to SCADE model    | <a href="https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/blob/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/manageData/trainData/trainData.etc">https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/blob/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/manageData/trainData/trainData.etc</a>  |
| SCADE designer         | Bernd Hekele, DB Netz AG   |
| Description            | <p>Implementation of the train data with the corresponding interfaces to track, driver and RBC.</p> <p>This component provides the storage of train data and the procedures necessary for updating data and controlling interfaces for validating train data at the DMI and to the RBC.</p> <p>The scope of train data is defined in Section 3.18.3 of the SRS. Train data are qualifying some safety relevant properties of the train like the length of the train, maximal speed and brake behaviour.</p> <p>During startup of the EVC a first definition of the train data is received from the train interface unit (TIU). During Start of Mission the data is updated respectively validated by the driver via the Driver Machine Interface (DMI). The driver may also change some of the data and has to confirm the set of data before being able to push the start button.</p> <p>When setting up a radio session to an RBC the EVC has to send the actual train data to the RBC for validation. here, the message flow is as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• sending Message 129 (Validated Train Data)</li> <li>• receiving Message 8 (Acknowledgment of Train Data) is processed as apart of the validation procedure with the RBC.</li> <li>• sending Message 146 (Acknolwedement) in the context of this message flow. T_TRAIN parameter of the messages is used to confirm the association of the messages.</li> </ul> <p>The trainData component uses a dedicated state for controlling the reception of the acknowledgement.</p> |
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter 3.18.3   |
| Safety integrity level | 4  |
| Time constraints       | n/a  |
| API requirements       | Train Data needs system time for stamping messages, access to input from the track messages and access to the output of RBC messages.  |



**Figure 20. `trainData` component SysML diagram.**

### 328 5.4.2 Interface

329 An overview of the interface of component `trainData` is shown in Figure 20. The inputs and  
330 outputs are described in detail in Section 5.4.2.1 respectively 5.4.2.2. Subcomponents are  
331 described in Section 5.4.3.

#### 332 5.4.2.1 Inputs

##### 333 5.4.2.1.1 `reset`

|                                     |   |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| Input name                          | <code>reset</code>  |
| Description                         | Triggers the reset of the train data and the train data status data.  |
| Source                              | Persistent data status management.<br>Can't we reference a component of the model or input of F2 here?                    |
| Type                                | <code>bool</code>   |
| Valid range of values               | <p><b>true</b> Perform reset of train data and train data status.</p> <p><b>false</b> No reset of data in this cycle.</p> |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary | n/a   |

Behaviour for values out of valid range n/a

Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) n/a

#### <sup>334</sup> 5.4.2.1.2 trainDatafromTIU

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Input name  | trainDatafromTIU  |
| Description   | <p>Train data received via TIU. The availability of data is indicated with the valid flag. This data is expected to be received in the first place. In the current implementation it is not supported to change data after a mission has been started. The structure covers the following components:</p> <p><b>valid</b> (bool): valid indicator for this component. In this structure valid means the data has been received from train. Additional states like validated by driver or validated by RBC are maintained in the status structure for train data.</p> <p><b>other components</b> : Other components are defined according to Section 3.18.3.2 of Subset-026.</p> |
| Source  | <p>Train Interface Unit (TIU)</p> <div style="background-color: #90EE90; border-radius: 10px; padding: 5px; display: inline-block;">           Can't we reference a component of the model or input of F2 here?         </div>  |
| Type  | TIU_Types_Pkg::trainData_T  |
| Valid range of values   | Input with valid information is indicated with the valid flag set to true.  |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | n/a   |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | When valid flag indicates false the data to be used is assumed to be default values. The component is not used when valid flag is false.  |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | Information is only expected during the Start of Mission Procedure. Once the information is successfully received it is not considered anymore. Change of train data by train during mission is not supported by this version of the openETCS OBU model.  |

#### <sup>335</sup> 5.4.2.1.3 trainDatafromDriver

Input name trainDatafromDriver

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Description | <p>Train data received via DMI from the driver. The availability of data is indicated with the valid flag. The data is expected as a mandatory parameter during start of mission. In the current implementation it is not supported to change data after a mission has been started. The structure consists of the following components:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>valid</b> (bool): valid indicator for this component. The data has been received from DMI. The flag is set to TRUE for a single cycle.</li> <li><b>systemTime</b> (Obu_BasicTypes_Pkg::T_internal_Type): timestamp set by the DMI. The component is not used by trainData.</li> <li><b>trainCtategory</b> (NC_TRAIN): Train category used for the static speed profile calculation. Thanks to NC_TRAIN, the train knows the SSP it must obey. Each bit represents one category. A train can belong to various categories.</li> <li><b>l_train</b> (Obu_BasicTypes_Pkg::L_internal_Type): Length of the train [cm].</li> <li><b>m_brakeperct</b> (int): brake percentage. range from 0 to 300.           <div style="border: 1px solid green; padding: 5px; background-color: #e0ffe0; margin-top: 5px;">             If this is a percentage, then the range would probably be 0...100.<br/>             Maybe we should replace percentage here?           </div> </li> <li><b>v_maxtrain</b> (Obu_BasicTypes_Pkg::V_internal_Type): maximum speed of the train in km/h.           <div style="border: 1px solid green; padding: 5px; background-color: #e0ffe0; margin-top: 5px;">             needs to be changed to cm/sec           </div> </li> <li><b>m_axleLoad</b> (M_AXLELOADCAT): axle load category according to Subset-026, Section 3.18.3.2.</li> <li><b>m_airTight</b> (M_AIRTIGHT): airtight system presence according to Subset-026, Section 3.18.3.2.</li> <li><b>m_loadingGauge</b> (M_LOADINGGAUGE): loading gauge category according to Subset-026, Section 3.18.3.2.</li> </ul> |
|-------------|--|

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Source  | Driver Machine Interface (DMI) <div style="border: 1px solid green; padding: 5px; background-color: #e0ffe0; margin-top: 5px;">         Can't we reference a component of the model or input of F2 here?       </div>                      |
| Type  | DMI_Messages_Bothways_Pkg::DMI_Train_Data_T  |
| Valid range of values   | Input with valid information is indicated with the valid flag.   |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | n/a  |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | When valid flag indicates false the data to be used is assumed to be default values. The component is not used when valid flag is false.   |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | No checks on individual values is done in this part of the openETCS EVC. We assume - if necessary - appropriate checks are part of the interface layer (e.g., CRC checks) This type of checks is not in the scope of the openETCS project. |

336 **5.4.2.1.4 trainDataAckfromDriver**

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Input name  | trainDataAckfromDriver  |
| Description   | <p>During start of mission the driver has to validate the train data. The confirmation is visible based on this input. The structure looks like:</p> <p><b>valid</b> (bool): valid indicator for this component. The data has been received from DMI. The flag is set to TRUE for a single cycle.</p> <p><b>systemTime</b> (Obu_BasicTypes_Pkg::T_internal_Type): timestamp set by the DMI. The component is not used by trainData.</p> <p><b>acknowledged</b> (bool): Result of the driver's acknowledgment.</p> |
| Source  | <p>Driver Machine Interface (DMI)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid green; padding: 2px;">Can't we reference a component of the model or input of F2 here?</div>  |
| Type  | DMI_Messages_DMI_to_EVC_Pkg::DMI_Train_Data_Ack_T   |
| Valid range of values   | <p>Input with valid information is indicated with the valid flag. In addition, the ack parameter has to be evaluated in order to recognise the decision of the driver.</p>  |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | n/a   |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | <p>When valid flag is false the component will not be used and default values will be used instead.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid green; padding: 2px;">This description was ambiguous. I tried to be more precise. Please check if this is still correct.</div>  |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | No checking on individual values is done in this part of the openETCS EVC. We assume - if necessary - appropriate checks are part of the interface layer (e.g., CRC checks) This type of checks is not in the scope of the openETCS project.  |

337 **5.4.2.1.5 trackMessages**

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Input name  | trackMessages  |
| Description | <p>Information carries the message received from RBC. Information is only used when the valid flag is true and the message source is Radio. Other information is not relevant. Information is evaluated as long as the validation procedure is not completed and a validation request with the RBC is pending.</p> |
| Source      | <p>Radio Transmission Module (RTM)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid green; padding: 2px;">Can't we reference a component of the model or input of F2 here?</div>  |

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Type  | Common_Types_Pkg::ReceivedMessage_T  |
| Valid range of values   | Input with valid information is indicated with the valid flag.   |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | n/a  |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | When valid flag indicates false the data to be used is assumed to be default values. The component is not used when valid flag is false.   |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | No checking on individual values is done in this part of the openETCS EVC. We assume - if necessary - appropriate checks are part of the interface layer (e.g., CRC checks) This type of checks is not in the scope of the openETCS project. |

<sup>338</sup> **5.4.2.1.6 timeStamp**

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Input name  | timeStamp  |
| Description   | Timestamp for messaging to the RBC.  |
| Source  | Derived from train time.<br>Should we reference the corresponding input of F2 here?  |
| Type  | T_TRAIN  |
| Valid range of values   | Positive non-zero real   |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | Parameter is not used for computation or addressing. No impact in this model.  |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | No impact in the EVC. Communication to the RBC will be broken.   |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | Communication to the RBC will be broken. No safety issue in the EVC since RBC connection errors are covered by the EVC function. |

<sup>339</sup> **5.4.2.1.7 eventsForTrainData**

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Input name  | eventsForTrainData   |
| Description | Timestamp for messaging to the RBC. Information of the EVC relevant for train data handling according to Section 3.18.3. In the current state of implementation the following events are evaluated: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• train stand-still</li> <li>• communication Session established</li> </ul> The MoRC ready input is used to indicate the evc:morc function is ready with acknowledgment of the communication session. |
| <hr/>       |  |

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Source  | EVC model.<br>Can't we reference a component of the model or input of F2 here? |
| Type  | trainData_Types_pkg::trainData_Events_T  |
| Valid range of values   | Structure of a set of bool. Each component may be true or false.               |
| Behaviour when value is n/a at boundary                                   |  |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                                   | n/a  |
| Behaviour when value is n/a erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) |  |

#### <sup>340</sup> 5.4.2.1.8 nidEngine

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Input name  | nidEngine   |
| Description   | ID of the engine. This ID is used in communication with the RBC in order to uniquely identify the engine. |
| Source  | Configuration<br>Can't we reference a component of the model or input of F2 here?                         |
| Type  | NID_ENGINE  |
| Valid range of values   | Structure of a set of bool. Each component may be true or false.  |
| Behaviour when value is n/a at boundary                                   |   |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                                   | n/a   |
| Behaviour when value is n/a erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) |   |

#### <sup>341</sup> 5.4.2.1.9 p0\_positionReport

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Input name  | p0_positionReport   |
| Description | Actual Position Report (packet 0) for communication with the RBC. |

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Source  | EVC model.<br>Can't we reference a component of the model or input of F2 here? |
| Type  | Packet_TrainTypes_Pkg::PT0_PositionReport_T                                    |
| Valid range of values   | This packet is administered by a valid flag.                                   |
| Behaviour when value is n/a at boundary                                   | n/a  |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                                   | n/a  |
| Behaviour when value is n/a erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | n/a  |

<sup>342</sup> **5.4.2.1.10 p1\_positionReport**

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Input name  | p1_positionReport  |
| Description   | Actual Position Report (packet 1) for communication with the RBC.              |
| Source  | EVC model.<br>Can't we reference a component of the model or input of F2 here? |
| Type  | Packet_TrainTypes_Pkg::PT1_PositionReport_2BG_T                                |
| Valid range of values   | This packet is administered by a valid flag.                                   |
| Behaviour when value is n/a at boundary                                   | n/a  |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                                   | n/a  |
| Behaviour when value is n/a erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | n/a  |

<sup>343</sup> **5.4.2.2 Outputs**

<sup>344</sup> **5.4.2.2.1 actualTrainData**

|             |                 |
|-------------|-----------------|
| Output name | actualTrainData |
|-------------|-----------------|

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Description | <p>Actual train data of the evc. Train data received via DMI from the driver. The availability of data is indicated with the valid flag. The data is expected as a mandatory parameter during start of mission. In the current implementation it is not supported to change data after a mission has been started. The structure consists of the following components:</p> <p><b>valid</b> (bool): valid indicator for this component. Valid indicates the data are updated after start-up of the system. The actual status of trainData is stored in the updatedStatus information.</p> <p><b>acknowledgedByDriver</b> (bool): Indicates this component has been validated by the driver.</p> <p style="background-color: #e0ffe0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 5px;">redundant information to status. Needs cleaning</p> <p><b>trainCategory</b> (NC_TRAIN): Train category used for the static speed profile calculation.</p> <p><b>cantDeficiency</b> (NC_CDTRAIN): Cant deficiency train category</p> <p><b>trainLength</b> (Obu_BasicTypes_Pkg::L_internal_Type): Length of the train [cm].</p> <p><b>brakePercentage</b> (int): brake percentage. range from 0 to 300.</p> <p><b>maxTrainSpeed</b> (Obu_BasicTypes_Pkg::V_internal_Type): maximum speed of the train in km/h.</p> <p style="background-color: #e0ffe0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 5px;">needs to be changed to cm/sec</p> <p><b>loadingGauge</b> (M_LOADINGGAUGE): loading gauge category according to 3.18.3.2</p> <p><b>axleLoadCategory</b> (M_AXLELOADCAT): axle load category according to Subset-026, Section 3.18.3.2.</p> <p><b>airTightSystem</b> (M_AIRTIGHT): airtight system presence according to Subset-026, Section 3.18.3.2.</p> <p><b>axleNumber</b> (int): axle number according to Subset-026, Section 3.18.3.2.</p> <p><b>numberNationalSystems</b> (int): The number of national systems available in the train.</p> <p><b>nationalSystems</b> (Packet_TrainTypes_Pkg::aNID_NTC_T): National Systems available in the train. The elements 0 .. numberNationalSystems - 1 are carrying the relevant data.</p> <p><b>numberTractionSystems</b> (int): The number of traction systems available in the train.</p> <p><b>tractionSystems</b> (Packet_TrainTypes_Pkg::aTractionIdentity_T): Traction Systems available in the train. The elements 0 ... numberTractionSystems - 1 are carrying the relevant data.</p> |
|-------------|--|

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Destination | ???   |
|             | we have to reference a component of the model or input of F2 here |

|   |                            |
|---|----------------------------|
| Type  | TIU_Types_Pkg::trainData_T |
| Valid range of values   | n/a                        |
| Behaviour when value is n/a at boundary                               |                            |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | n/a                        |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | n/a                        |

<sup>345</sup> **5.4.2.2.2 trainDataToRBC**

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Output name   | trainDataToRBC  |
| Description   | Messages for communicating with the RBC. Messages 129 (Validated Train Data) and 146 (Acknowledgement) are sent by this function. The presence of the message is indicated by a valid flag. |
| Destination   | Radio Output<br>Can't we reference a component of the model or input of F2 here?  |
| Type  | Radio_Types_Pkg::Radio_TrainTrack_Message_T   |
| Valid range of values   | indicated by valid flag.  |
| Behaviour when value is n/a at boundary                               |   |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | n/a   |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | n/a   |

<sup>346</sup> **5.4.2.2.3 triggerFromTrainData**

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Output name | triggerFromTrainData   |
| Description | For a full implementation of ETCS trainDAta has additional tasks described in the standard but not implemented in openETCS. For those extensions the triggers are pre-defined. |
| Destination | evc  |

---

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Type  | trainData_Types_pkg::trainData_Trigger_T |
| Valid range of values   | n/a                                      |
| Behaviour when value is n/a at boundary                                   |  |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                                   | n/a                                      |
| Behaviour when value is n/a erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) |  |

---

<sup>347</sup> **5.4.2.2.4 updatedStatus**

---

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Output name | updatedStatus   |
| Description | Detailed definition of the trainData status. The following components are defined:<br><br><b>valid</b> (bool): Data is initialised based on data received from the TIU.<br><b>validatedByDriver</b> (bool): Data has been validated by the Driver.<br><b>validatedbyRBC</b> (bool): Data has been validated by the RBC.<br><b>waitingForRBCResponse</b> (bool): 3.18.3.4.1 Train is waiting for ack to validation command.<br><b>driverIsModificationTrainData</b> (bool): 3.18.3.3.1 Driver is Modifying / Revalidating train data.<br><b>timeStampValidateToRBC</b> (T_TRAIN): 8.7.4 This label is used in communication with the RBC to identify the communication entity. Train data is acknowledged. |
| Destination | evc<br>Can't we reference a component of the model or input of F2 here?   |

---

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Type  | trainData_Types_pkg::trainDataStatus_T |
| Valid range of values   | indicated by valid flag.               |
| Behaviour when value is n/a at boundary                                   |  |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                                   | n/a                                    |
| Behaviour when value is n/a erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) |  |

---

---

### 348 5.4.3 Subcomponents

349 section needs to be completed

#### 350 5.4.3.1 trainDataStorage

##### 351 5.4.3.1.1 Component Requirements

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| Component name         | trainDataStorage  |
| Link to SCADE model    | <a href="https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/blob/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/manageData/trainData/trainData.etc">https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/blob/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/manageData/trainData/trainData.etc</a> |
| SCADE designer         | Bernd Hekele, DB Netz AG  |
| Description            | Storage of trainData information. The format of the data kept is described above. Data can be stored or merged depending on the source of data. A reset function is foreseen for initialisation of data.  |
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter 3.18.3  |
| Safety integrity level | 4   |
| Time constraints       | n/a   |
| API requirements       | n/a   |

#### 352 5.4.3.1.2 Interface

353 For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link  
354 above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.

#### 355 5.4.3.2 checkRadioMessages

##### 356 5.4.3.2.1 Component Requirements

|                     |   |
|---------------------|---|
| Component name      | checkRadioMessages  |
| Link to SCADE model | <a href="https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/blob/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/manageData/trainData/trainData.etc">https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/blob/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/manageData/trainData/trainData.etc</a> |
| SCADE designer      | Bernd Hekele, DB Netz AG  |
| Description         | The function checks an incoming radio message for relevance in the trainData context. Result is whether the message requests an acknowledgement and whether the radio message is a response to an outstanding validation request.                     |
| Input documents     | Subset-026, Chapter 3.18.3  |

|                        |     |
|------------------------|-----|
| Safety integrity level | 4   |
| Time constraints       | n/a |
| API requirements       | n/a |

357 **5.4.3.2.2 Interface**

358 For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link  
 359 above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.

360 **5.4.3.3 sendValidTrainDataRBC**

361 **5.4.3.3.1 Component Requirements**

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| Component name         | sendValidTrainDataRBC   |
| Link to SCADE model    | <a href="https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/blob/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/manageData/trainData/trainData.etc">https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/blob/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/manageData/trainData/trainData.etc</a> |
| SCADE designer         | Bernd Hekele, DB Netz AG  |
| Description            | This function send the validate data request of the RBC an updates trainData States with the relevant information.  |
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter 3.18.3  |
| Safety integrity level | 4   |
| Time constraints       | n/a   |
| API requirements       | n/a   |

362 **5.4.3.3.2 Interface**

363 For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link  
 364 above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.

365 **5.4.3.4 sendAcknowledgementRBC**

366 **5.4.3.4.1 Component Requirements**

|                     |   |
|---------------------|---|
| Component name      | sendAcknowledgementRBC  |
| Link to SCADE model | <a href="https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/blob/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/manageData/trainData/trainData.etc">https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/blob/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/manageData/trainData/trainData.etc</a> |
| SCADE designer      | Bernd Hekele, DB Netz AG  |
| Description         | This function prepares the Information for acknowledgement message. It is assumed it used with an boolean activator.  |

|                        |                            |
|------------------------|----------------------------|
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter 3.18.3 |
| Safety integrity level | 4                          |
| Time constraints       | n/a                        |
| API requirements       | n/a                        |

<sup>367</sup> **5.4.3.4.2 Interface**

<sup>368</sup> For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link  
<sup>369</sup> above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.

<sup>370</sup> **5.4.3.5 checkAcknowledgementGeneral**

<sup>371</sup> **5.4.3.5.1 Component Requirements**

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| Component name         | checkAcknowledgementGeneral   |
| Link to SCADE model    | <a href="https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/blob/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/manageData/trainData.trainData.etc">https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/blob/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/manageData/trainData.trainData.etc</a> |
| SCADE designer         | Bernd Hekele, DB Netz AG  |
| Description            | This function implements the acknowledgement to ma request and general message. It is actually an extension of the trainData function and needs to be moved to radio management functions.  |
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter 3.18.3  |
| Safety integrity level | 4   |
| Time constraints       | n/a   |
| API requirements       | n/a   |

<sup>372</sup> **5.4.3.5.2 Interface**

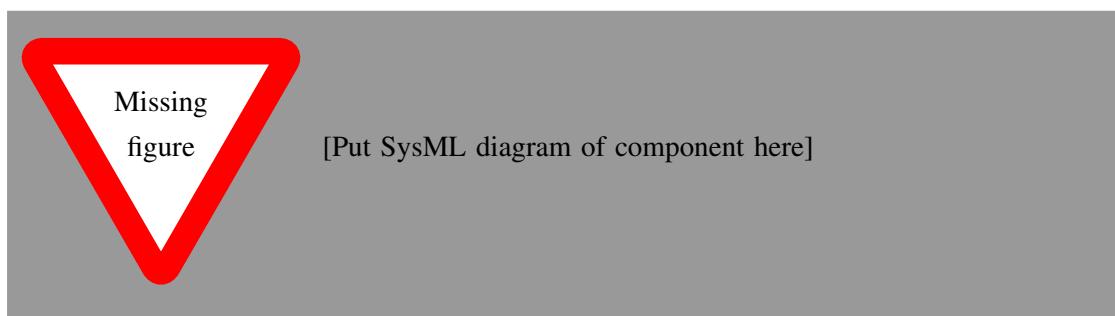
<sup>373</sup> For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link  
<sup>374</sup> above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.

**5.5<sup>375</sup> F2.4: TrackAtlas**

<sup>376</sup> Section needs to be completed

<sup>377</sup> **5.5.1 Component Requirements**

|                     |                    |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| Component name      | TrackAtlas         |
| Link to SCADE model | ???                |
| SCADE designer      | Jakob Gärtner, LEA |



**Figure 21. TrackAtlas component SysML diagram**

|                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| Description            | ???  |
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter ???  |
| Safety integrity level | 4  |
| Time constraints       | [If applicable description of time constraints, otherwise n/a] |
| API requirements       | [If applicable description of API requirements, otherwise n/a] |

### **378 5.5.2 Interface**

379 An overview of the interface of component TrackAtlas is shown in Figure 21. The inputs  
 380 and outputs are described in detail in Section 5.5.2.1 respectively 5.5.2.2. Subcomponents are  
 381 described in Section 5.5.3.

#### **382 5.5.2.1 Inputs**

##### **383 5.5.2.1.1 [Input 1 name]**

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Input name  | [Name of the input]   |
| Description   | [Brief description of the input]  |
| Source  | [Name of the source component]  |
| Type  | [Type of the input]   |
| Valid range of values   | [Complete list of valid values]   |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | [Description of components behaviour when input value is at boundary]                             |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | [Description of components behaviour when input value is out of valid range]                      |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | [Description of components behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious)] |

**384 5.5.2.1.2 [Input 2 name]** is licensed under the "openETCS Open License Terms" (oOLT).

|            |                     |
|------------|---------------------|
| Input name | [Name of the input] |
|------------|---------------------|

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | [Description of components behaviour when input value is at boundary]                             |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | [Description of components behaviour when input value is out of valid range]                      |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | [Description of components behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious)] |

385 **5.5.2.2 Outputs**

386 **5.5.2.2.1 [Output 1 name]**

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Output name   | [Name of the output]  |
| Description   | [Brief description of the output]   |
| Destination   | [Name of the destination component(s)]  |
| Type  | [Type of the output]  |
| Valid range of values   | [Complete list of valid values]   |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | [Description of components behaviour when output value is at boundary]                            |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | [Description of components behaviour when output value is out of valid range]                     |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | [Description of components behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious)] |

387 **5.5.2.2.2 [Output 2 name]**

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Output name                             | [Name of the output]  |
| Description                             | [Brief description of the output]   |
| Destination                             | [Name of the destination component(s)]  |
| Type                                    | [Type of the output]  |
| Valid range of values                   | [Complete list of valid values]   |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary     | [Description of components behaviour when output value is at boundary]        |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range | [Description of components behaviour when output value is out of valid range] |

---

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | [Description of components behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious)] |
|---|---|

---

388 **5.5.3 Subcomponents**

389 **5.5.3.1 StoreRaw\_NV**

390 **5.5.3.1.1 Component Requirements**

---

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| Component name         | StoreRaw_NV   |
| Link to SCADE model    | <a href="http://??">http://??</a>   |
| SCADE designer         | Jakob Gärtner, LEA  |
| Description            | [Brief description of functionality]  |
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter ??<br>Subset-026, Chapter ??<br>Subset-026, Chapter ??? |
| Safety integrity level | 4   |
| Time constraints       | [If applicable description of time constraints, otherwise n/a]              |
| API requirements       | [If applicable description of API requirements, otherwise n/a]              |

---

391 **5.5.3.1.2 Interface**

392 For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link  
393 above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.

394 **5.5.3.2 Build\_GradientProfile**

395 **5.5.3.2.1 Component Requirements**

---

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| Component name         | Build_GradientProfile   |
| Link to SCADE model    | <a href="http://??">http://??</a>   |
| SCADE designer         | Jakob Gärtner, LEA  |
| Description            | [Brief description of functionality]  |
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter ??<br>Subset-026, Chapter ??<br>Subset-026, Chapter ??? |
| Safety integrity level | 4   |
| Time constraints       | [If applicable description of time constraints, otherwise n/a]              |

---

---

|                  |  |
|------------------|--|
| API requirements | [If applicable description of API requirements, otherwise n/a] |
|------------------|--|

---

396 **5.5.3.2.2 Interface**

397 For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link  
 398 above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.

399 **5.5.3.3 Build\_MA**

400 **5.5.3.3.1 Component Requirements**

---

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| Component name         | Build_MA  |
| Link to SCADE model    | <a href="http://??">http://??</a>   |
| SCADE designer         | Jakob Gärtner, LEA  |
| Description            | [Brief description of functionality]  |
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter ??<br>Subset-026, Chapter ??<br>Subset-026, Chapter ??? |
| Safety integrity level | 4   |
| Time constraints       | [If applicable description of time constraints, otherwise n/a]              |
| API requirements       | [If applicable description of API requirements, otherwise n/a]              |

---

401 **5.5.3.3.2 Interface**

402 For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link  
 403 above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.

404 **5.5.3.4 Build\_MRSP**

405 **5.5.3.4.1 Component Requirements**

---

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| Component name         | Build_MRSP  |
| Link to SCADE model    | <a href="http://??">http://??</a>   |
| SCADE designer         | Jakob Gärtner, LEA  |
| Description            | [Brief description of functionality]  |
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter ??<br>Subset-026, Chapter ??<br>Subset-026, Chapter ??? |
| Safety integrity level | 4   |

---

|                  |  |
|------------------|--|
| Time constraints | [If applicable description of time constraints, otherwise n/a] |
| API requirements | [If applicable description of API requirements, otherwise n/a] |

406 **5.5.3.4.2 Interface**

407 For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link  
 408 above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.

409 **5.5.3.5 Manage\_EmergencyStop**

410 **5.5.3.5.1 Component Requirements**

|                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| Component name         | Manage_EmergencyStop   |
| Link to SCADE model    | <a href="http://??">http://??</a>  |
| SCADE designer         | Jakob Gärtner, LEA   |
| Description            | [Brief description of functionality]   |
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter ??<br>Subset-026, Chapter ??<br>Subset-026, Chapter ???? |
| Safety integrity level | 4  |
| Time constraints       | [If applicable description of time constraints, otherwise n/a]               |
| API requirements       | [If applicable description of API requirements, otherwise n/a]               |

411 **5.5.3.5.2 Interface**

412 For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link  
 413 above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.

414 **5.5.3.6 C\_P003V1\_OBU\_P003\_OBU**

415 **5.5.3.6.1 Component Requirements**

|                     |  |
|---------------------|--|
| Component name      | C_P003V1_OBU_P003_OBU  |
| Link to SCADE model | <a href="http://??">http://??</a>  |
| SCADE designer      | Jakob Gärtner, LEA   |
| Description         | [Brief description of functionality]   |
| Input documents     | Subset-026, Chapter ??<br>Subset-026, Chapter ??<br>Subset-026, Chapter ???? |

|                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| Safety integrity level | 4  |
| Time constraints       | [If applicable description of time constraints, otherwise n/a] |
| API requirements       | [If applicable description of API requirements, otherwise n/a] |

416 **5.5.3.6.2 Interface**

417 For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link  
 418 above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.

419 **5.5.3.7 GradientProfile\_to\_DMI**

420 **5.5.3.7.1 Component Requirements**

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| Component name         | GradientProfile_to_DMI  |
| Link to SCADE model    | <a href="http://??">http://??</a>   |
| SCADE designer         | Jakob Gärtner, LEA  |
| Description            | [Brief description of functionality]  |
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter ??<br>Subset-026, Chapter ??<br>Subset-026, Chapter ??? |
| Safety integrity level | 4   |
| Time constraints       | [If applicable description of time constraints, otherwise n/a]              |
| API requirements       | [If applicable description of API requirements, otherwise n/a]              |

421 **5.5.3.7.2 Interface**

422 For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link  
 423 above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.

424 **5.5.3.8 Manage\_MA\_Request**

425 **5.5.3.8.1 Component Requirements**

|                     |                                      |
|---------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Component name      | Manage_MA_Request                    |
| Link to SCADE model | <a href="http://??">http://??</a>    |
| SCADE designer      | Jakob Gärtner, LEA                   |
| Description         | [Brief description of functionality] |

---

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter ?.?<br>Subset-026, Chapter ?.?<br>Subset-026, Chapter ?.?.? |
| Safety integrity level | 4   |
| Time constraints       | [If applicable description of time constraints, otherwise n/a]                  |
| API requirements       | [If applicable description of API requirements, otherwise n/a]                  |

---

426 **5.5.3.8.2 Interface**

427 For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link  
428 above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.

429 **5.5.3.9 TA\_to\_ML**

430 **5.5.3.9.1 Component Requirements**

---

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| Component name         | TA_to_ML  |
| Link to SCADE model    | <a href="http://??">http://??</a>   |
| SCADE designer         | Jakob Gärtner, LEA  |
| Description            | [Brief description of functionality]  |
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter ?.?<br>Subset-026, Chapter ?.?<br>Subset-026, Chapter ?.?.? |
| Safety integrity level | 4   |
| Time constraints       | [If applicable description of time constraints, otherwise n/a]                  |
| API requirements       | [If applicable description of API requirements, otherwise n/a]                  |

---

431 **5.5.3.9.2 Interface**

432 For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link  
433 above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.

434 **5.5.3.10 SSP\_to\_MRSP**

435 **5.5.3.10.1 Component Requirements**

---

|                     |                                   |
|---------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Component name      | SSP_to_MRSP                       |
| Link to SCADE model | <a href="http://??">http://??</a> |
| SCADE designer      | Jakob Gärtner, LEA                |

---

| Description            | [Brief description of functionality]   |
|------------------------|--|
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter ??<br>Subset-026, Chapter ??<br>Subset-026, Chapter ???? |
| Safety integrity level | 4  |
| Time constraints       | [If applicable description of time constraints, otherwise n/a]               |
| API requirements       | [If applicable description of API requirements, otherwise n/a]               |

<sup>436</sup> **5.5.3.10.2 Interface**

<sup>437</sup> For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link  
<sup>438</sup> above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.

<sup>439</sup> **5.5.3.11 MRSP\_to\_MRSP\_to\_DMI**

<sup>440</sup> **5.5.3.11.1 Component Requirements**

|                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| Component name         | MRSP_to_MRSP_to_DMI  |
| Link to SCADE model    | <a href="http://??">http://??</a>  |
| SCADE designer         | Jakob Gärtner, LEA   |
| Description            | [Brief description of functionality]   |
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter ??<br>Subset-026, Chapter ??<br>Subset-026, Chapter ???? |
| Safety integrity level | 4  |
| Time constraints       | [If applicable description of time constraints, otherwise n/a]               |
| API requirements       | [If applicable description of API requirements, otherwise n/a]               |

<sup>441</sup> **5.5.3.11.2 Interface**

<sup>442</sup> For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link  
<sup>443</sup> above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.

**5.6<sup>444</sup> F2.5: Mode\_and\_Level**

<sup>445</sup> **5.6.1 Component Requirements**

|                     |   |
|---------------------|---|
| Component name      | Mode_and_Level  |
| Link to SCADE model | <a href="https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/ManageLevelsAndModes">https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/ManageLevelsAndModes</a> |

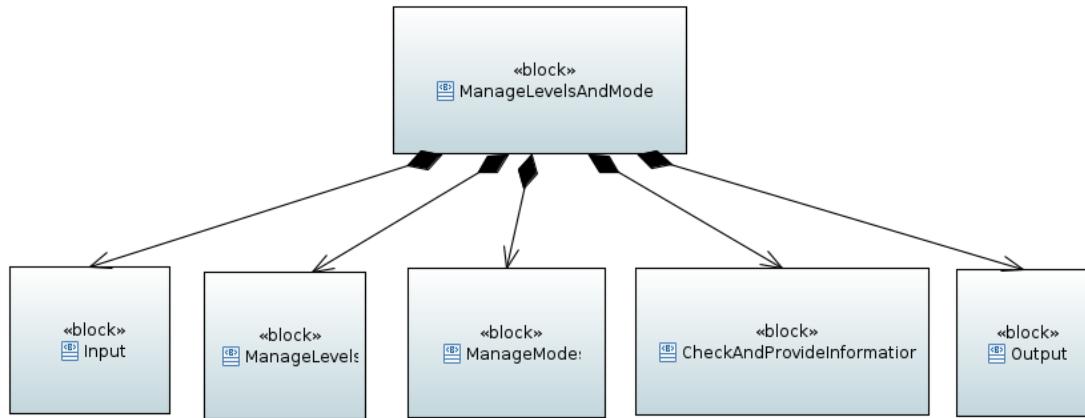


Figure 22. Mode\_and\_Level component SysML diagram

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| SCADE designer         | Marielle Petit-Duche and Matthias Güdemann, Systerel  |
| Description            | Modes and levels define the status of the ETCS regarding on-board functional status and track infrastructure. |
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter 4<br>Subset-026, Chapter 5  |
| Safety integrity level | 4   |
| Time constraints       | n/a   |
| API requirements       | n/a   |

## 446 5.6.2 Interface

447 An overview of the interface of component Mode\_and\_Level is shown in Figure 22 and Figure 23. The inputs and outputs are described in detail in Section 5.6.2.1 respectively 5.6.2.2.  
 448 Subcomponents are described in Section 5.6.3.

450 For a detail description of the interface and contents of the Scade model see <https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/blob/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/ManageLevelsAndModes/ModesAndLevels/ModesAndLevels.pdf>, for types definition see : [https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/blob/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/ManageLevelsAndModes/Level\\_And\\_Mode\\_Types/Level\\_And\\_Mode\\_Types.pdf](https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/blob/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/ManageLevelsAndModes/Level_And_Mode_Types/Level_And_Mode_Types.pdf)

### 455 5.6.2.1 Inputs

456 See Figure 24 for the inputs of the function.

#### 457 5.6.2.1.1 Data\_From\_DMI

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Input name  | Data_From_DMI   |
| Description | Set of data transmitted from DMI (driver acknowledgements and requests to switch modes and level) |

---

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Source  | manage_DMI_Input_Pkg::manageDMI_Input   |
| Type  | DMI_Types_Pkg::DMI_To_Modes_T   |
| Valid range of values   | <p>It is a complex type :</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• valid : bool, flag to inform of the freshness of the information</li> <li>• DriverAck : DMI_DriverAck_T, indicate which mode is acknowledged</li> <li>• DriverRequest : DMI_DriverRequest_T, table of boolean values for all the driver request related to mode changes.</li> <li>• LevelAck : bool, indication of Level change acknowledgement</li> </ul> |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | n/a   |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | n/a   |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | n/a   |

---

458    **5.6.2.1.2 Data\_From\_Localisation**

---

|                                     |  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| Input name                          | Data_From_Localisation   |
| Description                         | Set of data on position and speed of the train   |
| Source                              | <p>????</p> <div style="background-color: #90EE90; padding: 2px;">to be completed</div>  |
| Type                                | Level_And_Mode_Types_Pkg::T_Data_From_Localisation   |
| Valid range of values               | <p>It is a complex type :</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• BG_In_List_Expected_BG_In_SR : bool,</li> <li>• BG_In_List_Expected_BG_In_SH : bool,</li> <li>• PositionErrors : TrainPosition_Types_Pck::positionErrors_T,</li> <li>• Train_Position : TrainPosition_Types_Pck::trainPosition_T,</li> <li>• Train_Speed : Obu_BasicTypes_Pkg::Speed_T,</li> <li>• Train_Standstill : bool</li> </ul> |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary | n/a  |

---

---

Behaviour for values out n/a  
of valid range

---

Behaviour when value is n/a  
erroneous, absent or un-  
wanted (i.e. spurious)

---

<sup>459</sup> **5.6.2.1.3 Data\_From\_TIU**

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Input name  | Data_From_TIU                                   |
| Description   | Set of data providing by TIU                    |
| Source  | input_from_TIU_API_Pkg::manageTIU_input         |
| Type  | TIU_Types_Pkg::Message_Train_Interface_to_EVC_T |
| Valid range of values   | It is a complex type defined in the TIU package |
| Behaviour when value is n/a<br>at boundary  |   |
| Behaviour for values out n/a<br>of valid range                                    |   |
| Behaviour when value is n/a<br>erroneous, absent or un-<br>wanted (i.e. spurious) |   |

---

<sup>460</sup> **5.6.2.1.4 Data\_From\_Track\_Messages**

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Input name                                     | Data_From_Track_Messages  |
| Description                                    | Messages received from trackside containing information for modes and levels switches |
| Source   | ????<br>to be completed   |
| Type   | Level_And_Mode_Types_Pkg::T_Data_From_Track_Messages                                  |
| Valid range of values                          | It is a complex type containing the information of messages : 2, 6, 15, 16, 27 and 28 |
| Behaviour when value is n/a<br>at boundary     |   |
| Behaviour for values out n/a<br>of valid range |   |

---

Behaviour when value is n/a  
erroneous, absent or un-  
wanted (i.e. spurious)

---

#### <sup>461</sup> 5.6.2.1.5 Data\_From\_Track\_Packets

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Input name  | Data_From_Track_Packets  |
| Description   | Packets received from trackside containing information for modes and levels switches                               |
| Source  | ????<br>to be completed  |
| Type  | Level_And_Mode_Types_Pkg::T_Data_From_Track_Packet   |
| Valid range of values   | It is a complex type containing the information of packets : 12, 15, 21, 27, 41, 46, 63, 80, 135, 137, 138 and 139 |
| Behaviour when value is n/a<br>at boundary  |  |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range   | n/a  |
| Behaviour when value is n/a<br>erroneous, absent or un-<br>wanted (i.e. spurious) |  |

---

#### <sup>462</sup> 5.6.2.1.6 Data\_From\_speed\_and\_Supervision

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Input name  | Data_From_speed_and_Supervision   |
| Description | Data provided by the speed and supervision function                                 |
| Source      | Speed and Supervision function<br>Please use exact component name from SCADE model. |
| Type        | Level_And_Mode_Types_Pkg::T_Data_From_Speed_Supervision                             |

---

|                       |   |
|-----------------------|---|
| Valid range of values | Input type a complex type   |
|                       | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Estim_front_End_overpass_SR_Dist : bool</i>: the train overpass the SR distance with its estimated front end (from SR to trip mode condition 42)</li> <li>• <i>Estim_Front_End_Rear_SSP : bool</i>: estimated front end is rear of the start location of either SSP or gradient profile stored on-board (from FS, LS, OS to trip mode condition 69)</li> <li>• <i>Override_Function_Active</i>: boolean to indicate the state of the activation function</li> <li>• <i>EOA_Antenna_Overpass : bool</i>: the train overpasses the EOA with min safe antenna position Level 1 (from FS, LS, OS to trip mode condition 12)</li> <li>• <i>EOA_Front_End : bool</i> the train overpasses the EOA with min safe front end, Level 2 or 3 (from FS, LS, OS to trip mode condition 16)</li> <li>• <i>Train_Speed_Under_Override_Limit : bool</i> supervision when override function is active (to SR mode condition 37)</li> </ul> |

---

Behaviour when value is n/a  
at boundary

---

Behaviour for values out n/a  
of valid range

---

Behaviour when value is n/a  
erroneous, absent or un-  
wanted (i.e. spurious)

---

<sup>463</sup> 5.6.2.1.7 **driver\_level\_transition\_in**

---

|                       |  |
|-----------------------|--|
| Input name            | driver_level_transition_in   |
| Description           | Request of level transition given by the driver for example at start of mission  |
| Source                | manage_DMI_Input_Pkg::manageDMI_Input  |
| Type                  | Level_And_Modes_Types_Pkg::T_LevelTransition   |
| Valid range of values | <p>It is a complex type:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• is_set : bool,</li> <li>• transition : Level_And_Mode_Types_Pkg::T_LevelTansitionInfo,</li> <li>• LRBG : NID_LRBG,</li> <li>• referenceLocation : Obu_BasicTypes_Pkg::L_internal_Type</li> </ul> |

---

---

Behaviour when value is n/a  
at boundary

---

Behaviour for values out n/a  
of valid range

---

Behaviour when value is n/a  
erroneous, absent or un-  
wanted (i.e. spurious)

---

<sup>464</sup> **5.6.2.1.8 Cab\_In**

---

|            |        |
|------------|--------|
| Input name | Cab_In |
|------------|--------|

---

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Description | Identification of the cabine where the EVC is implemented |
|-------------|---|

---

|        |     |
|--------|-----|
| Source | TIU |
|--------|-----|

---

|      |                         |
|------|-------------------------|
| Type | TIU_Types_Pkg::cab_ID_T |
|------|-------------------------|

---

|                       |                            |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|
| Valid range of values | [CabUndefined, CabA, CabB] |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|

---

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Behaviour when value is n/a<br>at boundary |  |
|--|--|

---

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Behaviour for values out n/a<br>of valid range |  |
|--|--|

---

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Behaviour when value is n/a<br>erroneous, absent or un-<br>wanted (i.e. spurious) |  |
|---|--|

---

<sup>465</sup> **5.6.2.1.9 ERTMS\_Capabilities**

---

|            |                    |
|------------|--------------------|
| Input name | ERTMS_Capabilities |
|------------|--------------------|

---

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Description | Identification of the capabilities of the train in regards of ERTMS<br>levels |
|-------------|---|

---

|        |                        |
|--------|------------------------|
| Source | ???<br>to be completed |
|--------|------------------------|

---

|      |                      |
|------|----------------------|
| Type | T_ERTMS_Capabilities |
|------|----------------------|

---

|                       |                       |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| Valid range of values | It is a complex type: |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|

- NTC : bool,
- L0 : bool,
- L1 : bool,
- L2 : bool,
- L3 : bool

Behaviour when value is n/a  
at boundary

Behaviour for values out n/a  
of valid range

Behaviour when value is n/a  
erroneous, absent or un-  
wanted (i.e. spurious)

<sup>466</sup> **5.6.2.1.10 Data\_From\_Track\_MASSPGradient**

|            |                               |
|------------|-------------------------------|
| Input name | Data_From_Track_MASSPGradient |
|------------|-------------------------------|

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Description | Information that some packets have been received from trackside c |
|-------------|---|

|        |                         |
|--------|-------------------------|
| Source | ????<br>to be completed |
|--------|-------------------------|

|      |   |
|------|---|
| Type | Level_And_Mode_Types_Pkg::T_Data_From_Track_MASSPGradient |
|------|---|

|                       |  |
|-----------------------|--|
| Valid range of values | It is a complex type containing the information of packets : 12, 15,<br>21, 27 |
|-----------------------|--|

|  |
|--|
| Behaviour when value is n/a<br>at boundary |
|--|

|  |
|--|
| Behaviour for values out n/a<br>of valid range |
|--|

|   |
|---|
| Behaviour when value is n/a<br>erroneous, absent or un-<br>wanted (i.e. spurious) |
|---|

<sup>467</sup> **5.6.2.1.11 Data\_From\_F2\_Functions**

|            |                        |
|------------|------------------------|
| Input name | Data_From_F2_Functions |
|------------|------------------------|

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Description | Information received from other F2 functions |
|-------------|--|

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Source  | ????<br>to be completed  |
| Type  | Level_And_Mode_Types_Pkg::T_Data_From_F2_Functions   |
| Valid range of values   | <p>It is a complex type :</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Common_Errors : Common_Types_Pkg::MSG_Errors_T,</li> <li>• Failure_Occured : bool,,</li> <li>• Continue_Shunting_Active : bool,</li> <li>• Stop_Shunting_Stored : bool</li> </ul> |
| Behaviour when value is n/a at boundary                                   |  |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                                   |  |
| Behaviour when value is n/a erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) |  |

468    **5.6.2.1.12 Data\_FromSTM**

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Input name                              | Data_FromSTM  |
| Description                             | Information concerning STM embedded systems   |
| Source                                  | ????<br>to be completed   |
| Type                                    | Level_And_Mode_Types_Pkg::T_Data_FromSTM  |
| Valid range of values                   | <p>It is a complex type :</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Interface_to_National_System : bool,,</li> <li>• National_Trip_Order : bool</li> </ul> |
| Behaviour when value is n/a at boundary |   |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range |   |

---

Behaviour when value is n/a  
erroneous, absent or un-  
wanted (i.e. spurious)

---

<sup>469</sup> **5.6.2.2 Outputs**

<sup>470</sup> **5.6.2.2.1 Compatible\_Mode\_And\_Level**

|                       |   |
|-----------------------|---|
| Output name           | Compatible_Mode_And_Level                       |
| Description           | Structure containing mode and lavel information |
| Destination           | all the components                              |
| Type                  | Level_And_Mode_Types_Pkg::T_Mode_Level          |
| Valid range of values | It is a complex type :                          |

- CompatibleModeAndLevel : bool,
- level : M\_LEVEL,
- newLevel : bool,
- mode : M\_MODE,
- newMode : bool

---

Behaviour when value is n/a  
at boundary

---

Behaviour for values out n/a  
of valid range

---

Behaviour when value is n/a  
erroneous, absent or un-  
wanted (i.e. spurious)

---

<sup>471</sup> **5.6.2.2.2 Data\_To\_DMI**

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Output name                                | Data_To_DMI                                     |
| Description                                | Data information to provide to the driver       |
| Destination                                | all the components                              |
| Type                                       | DMI_Types_Pkg::DMI_ModesToDMI_T                 |
| Valid range of values                      | It is a complex type defined in the DMI package |
| Behaviour when value is n/a<br>at boundary |   |

Behaviour for values out of valid range n/a

Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) n/a

#### <sup>472</sup> 5.6.2.2.3 Data\_To\_BG\_Management

|                       |  |
|-----------------------|--|
| Output name           | Data_To_BG_Management  |
| Description           | Set of data concerning BG management   |
| Destination           | all the components   |
| Type                  | Level_And_Mode_Types_Pkg::T_Data_To_BG_Management  |
| Valid range of values | <p>It is a complex type :</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• EoM_Procedure_req : bool,</li> <li>• Clean_BG_List_SH_Area : bool,</li> <li>• MA_Req : bool,</li> <li>• Req_for_SH_from_Driver : bool,</li> <li>• Connection_to_RBC_req : bool,</li> <li>• Position_Report_Needed : bool</li> </ul> |

Behaviour when value is at boundary n/a

Behaviour for values out of valid range n/a

Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) n/a

#### <sup>473</sup> 5.6.2.2.4 Sevice\_Brake\_Command

|                       |                              |
|-----------------------|------------------------------|
| Output name           | Sevice_Brake_Command         |
| Description           | Command of the Service brake |
| Destination           | all the components           |
| Type                  | bool                         |
| Valid range of values |                              |

---

Behaviour when value is n/a  
at boundary

---

Behaviour for values out n/a  
of valid range

---

Behaviour when value is n/a  
erroneous, absent or un-  
wanted (i.e. spurious)

---

<sup>474</sup> **5.6.2.2.5 EB\_Request**

---

Output name EB\_Request

---

Description Command of the Emergency brake

---

Destination all the components

---

Type bool

---

Valid range of values

---

Behaviour when value is n/a  
at boundary

---

Behaviour for values out n/a  
of valid range

---

Behaviour when value is n/a  
erroneous, absent or un-  
wanted (i.e. spurious)

---

<sup>475</sup> **5.6.2.2.6 announcedLevelTransition**

---

Input name announcedLevelTransition

---

Description Level transition selected for an immediate or future switch

---

Destination all the components

---

Type Level\_And\_Modes\_Types\_Pkg::T\_LevelTransition

---

Valid range of values It is a complex type:

- is\_set : bool,
  - transition : Level\_And\_Mode\_Types\_Pkg::T\_LevelTransitionInfo,
  - LRBG : NID\_LRBG,
  - referenceLocation : Obu\_BasicTypes\_Pkg::L\_internal\_Type
-

---

Behaviour when value is n/a  
at boundary

---

Behaviour for values out n/a  
of valid range

---

Behaviour when value is n/a  
erroneous, absent or un-  
wanted (i.e. spurious)

<sup>476</sup> **5.6.2.2.7 isAvailableForUse**

---

Output name isAvailableForUse

---

Description the output announcedLevelTransition is available for use, ie. corre-  
spond to ERTMS capabilities of the train

---

Destination all the components

---

Type bool

---

Valid range of values

---

Behaviour when value is n/a  
at boundary

---

Behaviour for values out n/a  
of valid range

---

Behaviour when value is n/a  
erroneous, absent or un-  
wanted (i.e. spurious)

<sup>477</sup> **5.6.3 Subcomponents**

<sup>478</sup> **5.6.3.1 Level\_Management**

<sup>479</sup> **5.6.3.1.1 Component Requirements**

---

Component name Level\_Management

---

Link to SCADE model [https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/  
System/ObuFunctions/ManageLevelsAndModes/Levels](https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/ManageLevelsAndModes/Levels)

---

SCADE designer Marielle Petit-Duche and Matthias Gudemann, Systerel

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Description | <p>The level management subsystem receives level transition order tables and selects the order with the highest probability. It stores the information about the selected transition order and transits to the requested level once the train passes the location of the level transition.</p> <p>If required, the driver is asked to acknowledge the transition, in case of no acknowledgment or if conditions for the level transition are not fulfilled, the train gets tripped.</p> <p>On the most abstract level the design consists of the <i>manage_priorities</i> function which takes the level transition order priority tables as inputs and computes the highest priority transition.</p> <p>This transition order is fed to the <i>computeLevelTransitions</i> operator. This operator consists of three main parts. The <i>ComputeTransitionConditions</i> operator that emits the fulfilled conditions to change from a given level to a new level, the <i>LevelStateMachine</i> that stores the current level and takes the computed change conditions as input for possible level transitions and finally the <i>driverAck</i> operator which contains a state machine that stores the information whether the system is currently waiting for a driver acknowledgement and emits the train trip information if necessary.</p> |
|-------------|---|

|                        |                          |
|------------------------|--------------------------|
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter 5.10 |
| Safety integrity level | 4                        |
| Time constraints       | n/a                      |
| API requirements       | n/a                      |

#### 480 5.6.3.1.2 Interface

481 For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link  
 482 above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation [https://github.com/openETCS/  
 483 modeling/blob/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/ManageLevelsAndModes/  
 484 Levels/Levels.rtf](https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/blob/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/ManageLevelsAndModes/Levels/Levels.rtf)

#### 485 5.6.3.2 Mode\_Management

##### 486 5.6.3.2.1 Component Requirements

|                     |   |
|---------------------|---|
| Component name      | Mode_Management   |
| Link to SCADE model | <a href="https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/ManageLevelsAndModes/Modes">https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/<br/>   System/ObuFunctions/ManageLevelsAndModes/Modes</a> |
| SCADE designer      | Marielle Petit-Doché, Systerel  |

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Description | <p>This function is in charge of the computation of new mode to apply according to conditions from inputs (track information, driver interactions, train data,...) and other functions.</p> <p>Three subfunctions are defined:</p> <p><b>Inputs</b> proceeds to inputs check and preparation.</p> <p><b>ComputeModesCondition</b> performs all specific procedure linked to mode management and defined in [1] sections 5.4, 5.5, 5.6, 5.7, 5.8, 5.9, 5.11, 5.12, 5.13, 5.19 and specifies the conditions to define a mode transition according condition table of section 4.6.3 of [1]</p> <p><b>SwitchModes</b> performs the mode selection according the conditions and priorities defined in transition table section 4.6.2 of [1]</p> <p><b>Outputs</b> prepares packet of outputs.</p> |
|-------------|--|

|                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter 4.4, 4.6, 5.4, 5.5, 5.6, 5.7, 5.8, 5.9, 5.11, 5.12, 5.13, 5.19 |
| Safety integrity level | 4  |
| Time constraints       | n/a  |
| API requirements       | n/a  |

#### 487 5.6.3.2.2 Interface

488 For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link  
 489 above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation <https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/blob/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/ManageLevelsAndModes/Modes/Modes.pdf>  
 491

#### 492 5.6.3.3 Check\_and\_Provide\_Mode\_and\_Level

##### 493 5.6.3.3.1 Component Requirements

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| Component name         | Check_and_Provide_Mode_and_Level  |
| Link to SCADE model    | <a href="https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/ManageLevelsAndModes/ModesAndLevels">https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/ManageLevelsAndModes/ModesAndLevels</a> |
| SCADE designer         | Marielle Petit-Doche, Systerel  |
| Description            | Checks compatibility between mode and level and provides outputs.   |
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter 3.6.5   |
| Safety integrity level | 4   |
| Time constraints       | n/a   |
| API requirements       | n/a   |

---

#### 494 5.6.3.3.2 Interface

495 For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link  
496 above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.

### 5.7<sub>497</sub> F2.6: calculateTrainPosition

#### 498 5.7.1 Component Requirements

---

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| Component name         | calculateTrainPosition  |
| Link to SCADE model    | <a href="https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/ManageLocationRelatedInformation/TrainPosition/CalculateTrainPosition">https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/ManageLocationRelatedInformation/TrainPosition/CalculateTrainPosition</a>   |
| SCADE designer         | Uwe Steinke, Siemens AG   |
| Description            | <p>The main purpose of the function is to calculate the locations of linked and unlinked balise groups (BGs) and the current train position while the train is running along the track. In detail, the calculateTrainPosition function provides a couple of essential subfunctions for the onboard unit. These are mainly:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Creating and maintaining an obu internal coordinate system for all types of location based data.</li> <li>• Storing all linked and unlinked balise groups resulting from over passing or from announcements (linking information) from the track.</li> <li>• Calculating and maintaining the locations of all stored balise groups during the train trip, based on odometry and linking information.</li> <li>• Permanently calculating the current train position based on odometry and passed balise group information.</li> <li>• Providing the last recently passed linked balise group as the LRBG.</li> <li>• Providing additional position attribute information.</li> <li>• Deleting stored balise groups, when appropriate.</li> <li>• Detecting linking consistency errors.</li> <li>• Determining, if linking is used on board.</li> </ul> <p>The calculation algorithms for locations and positions are implemented as specified in <a href="https://github.com/openETCS/SRS-Analysis/blob/master/System%20Analysis/WorkingRepository/Group4/SUBSET_26_3-6/DetermineTrainLocationProcedures.pdf">https://github.com/openETCS/SRS-Analysis/blob/master/System%20Analysis/WorkingRepository/Group4/SUBSET_26_3-6/DetermineTrainLocationProcedures.pdf</a></p> |
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter 3.6   |
| Safety integrity level | 4   |

---

---

|                  |  |
|------------------|--|
| Time constraints | All events at the calculateTrainPosion inputs must be applied strictly in the correct chronological order.   |
| API requirements | The currentOdometry input as well as the odometry stamps within msgFromTrack must be fed with odometry values strictly adhering to <a href="https://github.com/openETCS/SRS-Analysis/blob/master/System%20Analysis/WorkingRepository/Group4/SUBSET_26_3-6/DetermineTrainLocationProcedures.pdf">https://github.com/openETCS/SRS-Analysis/blob/master/System%20Analysis/WorkingRepository/Group4/SUBSET_26_3-6/DetermineTrainLocationProcedures.pdf</a> , chapt. 3. |

---

499 **5.7.2 Interface**

500 An overview of the interface of component calculateTrainPosition is shown in Figure ???. The  
 501 inputs and outputs are described in detail in Section 5.7.2.1 respectively 5.7.2.2. Subcomponents  
 502 are described in Section 5.7.3.

503 **5.7.2.1 Inputs**

504 **5.7.2.1.1 currentOdometry**

---

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Input name  | currentOdometry   |
| Description | currentOdometry is the actual odometry information as known by the whole EVC model and provided by the models external interface. |
| Source      | External model interface input  |
| Type        | Obu_BasicTypes_Pkg::odometry_T  |

---

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Valid range of values   | <p>Obu_BasicTypes_Pkg::odometry_T is a complex data type. Values are given for each element. Format is: Type Name: range / list of values.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• bool valid: [true   false]. Must be permanently set to "true".</li> <li>• timestamp: (0 - 2147483647). Current time in ms, must be monotonically increasing.</li> <li>• odo: Obu_BasicTypes_Pkg::OdometryLocations_T: current odometry log values with uncertainties; must behave according to <a href="https://github.com/openETCS/SRS-Analysis/blob/master/System%20Analysis/WorkingRepository/Group4/SUBSET_26_3-6/DetermineTrainLocationProcedures.pdf">https://github.com/openETCS/SRS-Analysis/blob/master/System%20Analysis/WorkingRepository/Group4/SUBSET_26_3-6/DetermineTrainLocationProcedures.pdf</a> [[ 3.1 ]]. Members of OdometryLocations_T are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– o_nominal: L_internal_Type: nominal value in cm.</li> <li>– o_min: L_internal_Type:<br/>min. distance = o_min2 - o_min1</li> <li>– o_max: L_internal_Type:<br/>max distance = o_max2 - o_max1</li> </ul> </li> <li>• speed: Obu_BasicTypes_Pkg::OdometrySpeeds_T: not used by calculateTrainPosition</li> <li>• acceleration: Obu_BasicTypes_Pkg::A_internal_Type: not used by calculateTrainPosition</li> <li>• motionState: [noMotion   Motion]</li> <li>• motionDirection: Obu_BasicTypes_Pkg::odoMotionDirection_T [ unknownDirection   cabAFirst   cabBFirst ]</li> </ul> <p><i>calculateTrainPosition requires consistent value sets of currentOdometry. calculateTrainPosition itself does not check.</i></p> |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | n/a   |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | Enumerated values out of range prohibit code generation. In all other cases, calculateTrainPosition does not have the knowledge for out-of-range checks.  |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | Leads to misbehaviour.  |

505    **5.7.2.1.2 msgFromTrack**

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Input name  | msgFromTrack  |
| Description | With msgFromTrack calculateTrainPosition receives datagrams from balise groups and RBC.   |
| Source      | Manage_TrackSideInformation_Integration_Pkg::<br>Manage_TrackSideInformation_Integration/ |

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Type                                    | Common_Types_Pkg::ReceivedMessage_T   |
| Valid range of values                   | <p>Common_Types_Pkg::ReceivedMessage_T is a complex data type. Values are given for each element. Format is: Type Name: range / list of values.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• bool valid: [true   false]. "true" flags a datagram as received and to be evaluated by calculateTrainPosition. Must be set for exactly 1 clock for each received datagram and stay unset otherwise.</li> <li>• source: Common_Types_Pkg::MsgSource_T: Designates the source of the datagram:<br/>( msrc_undefined   msrc_Euroradio   msrc_Eurobalise   msrc_RadioInfillUnit   msrc_OBU )</li> <li>• radioMetaData: Common_Types_Pkg::radioMetaData_T: not used by calculateTrainPosition.</li> <li>• BG_Common_Header: BG_Types_Pkg::BG_Header_T: Header information received from balise groups, refer to Manage_TrackSideInformation_Integration_Pkg::Manage_TrackSideInformation_Integration</li> <li>• Radio_Common_Header: Radio_Types_Pkg::Radio_TrackTrain_Header_T: Header information received from RBC via radio, refer to Manage_TrackSideInformation_Integration_Pkg::Manage_TrackSideInformation_Integration</li> <li>• packets: Common_Types_Pkg::CompressedPackets_T: datagram packets, refer to Manage_TrackSideInformation_Integration_Pkg::Manage_TrackSideInformation_Integration. calculateTrainPosition extracts packet 5 (linking information), if available.</li> <li>• sendingRBC: Common_Types_Pkg::RBC_Id_T: designates the origin RBC and the mobile modem channel used onboard, if received via radio. Refer to Manage_TrackSideInformation_Integration_Pkg::Manage_TrackSideInformation_Integration for more detailed information.</li> </ul> <p><i>calculateTrainPosition expects the received information to be consistent and validated before applied to. It does not check, if the information is appropriate due to current EVC mode, level, train or balise orientation. Received balise group or linking information already known by calculateTrainPosition overrides former data. All messages must be applied in the correct chronological order</i></p> |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary     | n/a   |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range | Enumerated values out of range prohibit code generation. In all other cases, calculateTrainPosition does not have the knowledge for out-of-range checks.  |

Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) Causes misbehaviour.

---

506 **5.7.2.1.3 trainProperties**

---

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Input name                              | trainProperties   |
| Description                             | Supplies calculateTrainPosition with train specific properties required for position calculation.   |
| Source                                  | EVC_Support_Pkg::maintainTrainProperties  |
| Type                                    | TrainPosition_Types_Pck::trainProperties_T  |
| Valid range of values                   | <p>TrainPosition_Types_Pck::trainProperties_T is a complex data type. Values are given for each element. Format is: Type Name: range / list of values.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• nid_engine:: NID_ENGINE as defined by subset 026-7.</li> <li>• nid_operational: NID_OPERATIONAL as defined by subset 026-7.</li> <li>• l_train: L_TRAIN as defined by subset 026-7.</li> <li>• d_baliseAntenna_2_frontend: Obu_BasicTypes_Pkg::LocWithInAcc_T: Distance from the trains balise antenna to the trains front end, in cm with uncertainties.</li> <li>• d_frontend_2_rearend: Obu_BasicTypes_Pkg::LocWithInAcc_T: Distance from the trains front end to rear end, in cm with uncertainties.</li> <li>• locationAccuracy_DefaultValue: Obu_BasicTypes_Pkg::LocWithInAcc_T: Default location accuracy of balise groups (subset 026, 3.6.4.3.2), in cm with uncertainties.</li> <li>• centerDetectionAcc_DefaultValue: Obu_BasicTypes_Pkg::LocWithInAcc_T: Default accuracy of balise groups detection of the BTM, in cm with uncertainties. Will be applied, if centerDetectionInaccuracy from BTM is not available, especially for announced and not yet passed BGs.</li> </ul> <p><i>calculateTrainPosition expects this information to be consistent and validated before applied to.</i></p> |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary     | n/a   |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range | Enumerated values out of range prohibit code generation. In all other cases, calculateTrainPosition does not have the knowledge for out-of-range checks.  |

---

Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) Causes misbehaviour.

507 **5.7.2.1.4 passedBG**

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Input name  | passedBG   |
| Description | Deprecated alternative input to msgFromTrack. Must not be used any more and is subject to be removed in subsequent releases. |

508 **5.7.2.1.5 reset**

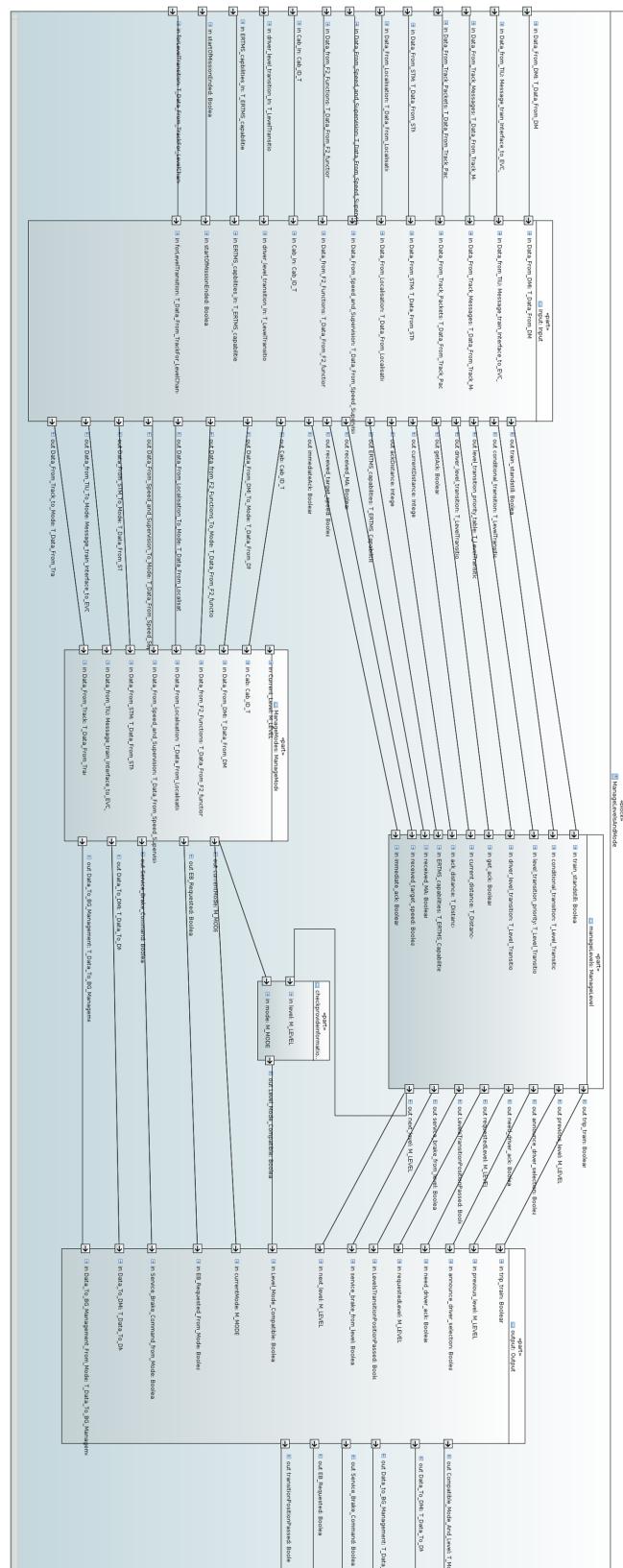
|   |  |
|---|--|
| Input name  | reset  |
| Description   | Resets and keeps calculateTrainPosition at its initial state and deletes all internally stored data. |
| Source  | To whom it may concern/  |
| Type  | bool   |
| Valid range of values   | [ false   true ]   |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | n/a  |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | Enumerated values out of range prohibit code generation.   |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | Causes misbehaviour.   |

509 **5.7.2.2 Outputs**

510 **5.7.2.2.1 trainPosition**

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Output name | trainPosition  |
| Description | Provides the current train position and LRBG with its attributes. All distance and location computations of the OBU must be based on this information. |
| Destination | Any drain component which needs the current train position or LRBG.  |
| Type        | TrainPosition_Types_Pck::trainPosition_T   |

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Valid range of values                                 | <p>TrainPosition_Types_Pck::trainPosition_T is a complex data type. Values are given for each element. Format is: Type Name: range / list of values.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• valid: bool: [true   false]. Always true, except for exceptional circumstances.</li> <li>• timestamp: Obu_BasicTypes_Pkg::T_internal_Type: latest time in ms.</li> <li>• trainPositionIsUnknown: bool: true, if the train position is evaluated as "unknonwn" (refer to subset-026, 3.6.3.1.3.1).</li> <li>• noCoordinateSystemHasBeenAssigned: bool: refer to subset 026, 3.4.2, 3.6.3.1.4.</li> <li>• trainPosition: Obu_BasicTypes_Pkg::LocWithInAcc_T: The calculated train position with uncertainties</li> <li>• estimatedFrontEndPosition: Obu_BasicTypes_Pkg::Location_T: Train front end position in cm.</li> <li>• minSafeFrontEndPosition: Obu_BasicTypes_Pkg::Location_T: Train front end position in cm.</li> <li>• maxSafeFrontEndPostion: Obu_BasicTypes_Pkg::Location_T: Train front end position in cm.</li> <li>• LRBG: TrainPosition_Types_Pck::positionedBG_T: the current LRBG.</li> <li>• prvLRBG: TrainPosition_Types_Pck::positionedBG_T: the balise group passed previously to LRBG. For type definition, see below.</li> <li>• nominalOrReverseToLRBG: Q_DLRBG: Orientation of the train in relation to the direction of the LRBG, see subset 026-7.</li> <li>• trainOrientationToLRBG: Q_DIRLRGB: Orientation of the train in relation to the direction of the LRBG, see subset 026-7.</li> <li>• trainRunningDirectionToLRBG: Q_DIRTRAIN: Direction of train movement in relation to the LRBG orientation, see subset 026-7.</li> <li>• linkingIsUsedOnboard: bool: Designates, if at least one announced linked BG is ahead.</li> </ul> <p><i>calculateTrainPosition provides the train position to whom it concerns and recalculates it in every clock cycle.</i></p> |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                   | n/a   |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range               | n/a   |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted | n/a   |



**Figure 23. Mode\_and\_Level data flow SysML diagram**

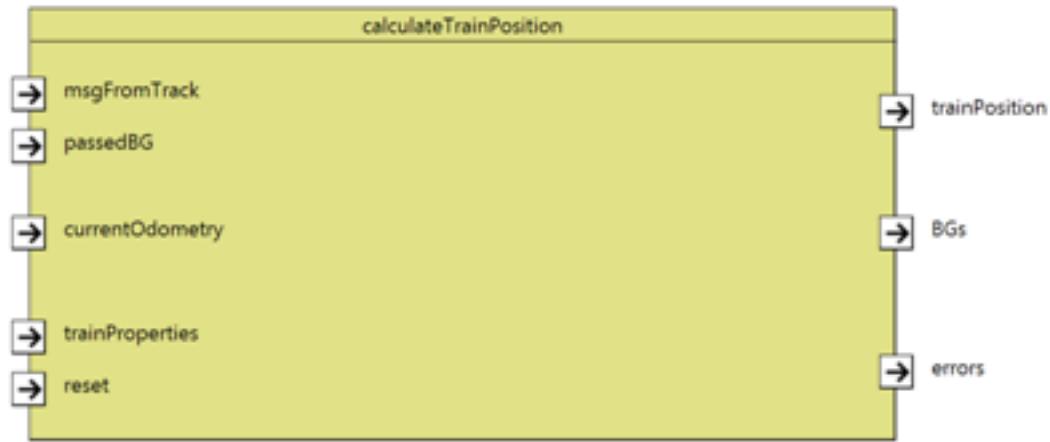
**Table 5: Inputs of ManageLevelAndMode**

| Name                            | Type   | Comments and Information |
|---------------------------------|--|--------------------------|
| Data_From_DMI                   | DMI_Types_Pkg::DMI_To_Modes_T  |                          |
| Data_From_Localisation          | Level_And_Mode_Type s_Pkg::T_Data_From_Localisation                  |                          |
| Data_From_TIU                   | TIU_Types_Pkg::Messa ge_Train_Interface_to_EVC_T                     |                          |
| Data_From_Track_Messages        | Level_And_Mode_Type s_Pkg::T_Data_From_Track_Mess                    |                          |
| Data_From_Track_Packets         | Level_And_Mode_Type s_Pkg::T_Data_From_Track_Packet                  |                          |
| Data_From_Speed_and_Supervision | Level_And_Mode_Type s_Pkg::T_Data_From_Speed_Supervision             |                          |
| Cab_In                          | TIU_Types_Pkg::cab_ID_T  |                          |
| driver_level_transition_In      | Level_And_Mode_Type s_Pkg::T_LevelTransition                         |                          |
| ERTMS_capabilities_In           | Level_And_Mode_Type s_Pkg::T_ERTMS_capabilities                      |                          |
| Data_from_Track_MASSPGradient   | Level_And_Mode_Type s_Pkg::T_Data_From_Track_MASSPGradient_Available |                          |
| Data_From_F2_Functions          | Level_And_Mode_Type s_Pkg::T_Data_From_F2_functions                  |                          |
| Data_From_STM                   | Level_And_Mode_Type s_Pkg::T_Data_From_STM                           |                          |

**Figure 24. Mode\_and\_Level inputs****Table 6: Outputs of ManageLevelAndMode**

| Name                        | Type   | Comments and Information |
|-----------------------------|--|--------------------------|
| Compatible_Mode_And_Level   | Level_And_Mode_Type s_Pkg::T_Mode_Level            |                          |
| Data_To_DMI                 | DMI_Types_Pkg::DMI_ModesToDMI_T                    |                          |
| Data_To_BG_Management       | Level_And_Mode_Type s_Pkg::T_Data_To_BG_Management |                          |
| Service_Brake_Command       | bool   |                          |
| EB_Requested                | bool   |                          |
| announcedLevelTransitionOut | Level_And_Mode_Type s_Pkg::T_LevelTransition       |                          |
| isAvailableForUseOut        | bool   |                          |

**Figure 25. Mode\_and\_Level outputs**



**Figure 26. calculateTrainPosition SysML diagram**

511 **5.7.2.2.2 BGs**

| Output name | BGs   |
|-------------|---|
| Description | A list of all linked and unlinked balise groups - known to calculate-TrainPosition - in the order they are arranged on the track. |
| Destination | Any subsequent component which needs the current collection of balises groups.  |
| Type        | array of TrainPosition_Types_Pck::positionedBG_T  |

|                       |  |
|-----------------------|--|
| Valid range of values | TrainPosition_Types_Pck::positionedBG_T is a complex data type. Values are given for each array element. Format is: Type Name: range / list of values.   |
|                       | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• valid: bool: [true   false]. "true" for every existing balise group.</li> <li>• nid_c: NID_C: refer to subset 026-7.</li> <li>• nid_bg: NID_BG: refer to subset 026-7.</li> <li>• q_link: Q_LINK: refer to subset 026-7.</li> <li>• location: Obu_BasicTypes_Pkg::LocWithInAcc_T: The best known location (with inaccuracies) calculated from linking and from passing information.</li> <li>• seqNoOnTrack: int: Sequence number, specifies the order of the BG passed or expected to be passed.</li> <li>• infoFromLinking: TrainPosition_Types_Pck::infoFromLinking_T: Describes a linked BG as announced from the linking BG. Mainly, this information is taken from the linking packet.</li> <li>• infoFromPassing: BG_Types_Pkg::passedBG_T: If the balise group has been passed already, this is the relevant information received from the BG.</li> </ul> |

*calculateTrainPosition provides the list of balise groups to whom it concerns.*

---

Behaviour when value is n/a  
at boundary

---

Behaviour for values out n/a  
of valid range

---

Behaviour when value is n/a  
errorneous, absent or un-  
wanted

---

### 5.7.2.2.3 errors

---

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Output name | errors   |
| Description | Provides a collection of error flags, raised by calculateTrainPosition.                    |
| Destination | Error handlers and components which need to know of common and linking consistency errors. |
| Type        | TrainPosition_Types_Pck::positionErrors_T  |

|                       |   |
|-----------------------|---|
| Valid range of values | <p>TrainPosition_Types_Pck::positionErrors_T is a complex data type. Values are given for each array element. Format is: Type Name: range / list of values.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• outOfMemSpace: bool: Memory overrun: a passed or announced BG could not be stored.</li> <li>• passedBG_foundNotWhereExpected: bool: The currently passed linked BG location does not match its expectation window.</li> <li>• positionCalculation_inconsistent: A consistency problem arose during position calculation.</li> <li>• linkedBGMissed: bool: The expectation window for an announced BG was passed without detecting the BG.</li> <li>• BGpassedInUnexpectedDirection: bool: The BG was passed in a different orientation than announced via linking.</li> <li>• BG_LinkingConsistencyError: bool: Linking consistency error (ref. subset 026, 3.16.2.3).</li> <li>• twoConsecutiveLinkedBGs_missed: bool: 2 consecutive linked balise groups announced by linking are not detected and the end of the expectation window of the second balise group has been passed (subset 026, 3.16.2.7.1).</li> <li>• doubleRepositioningError: bool: Double repositioning error (3.16.2.7.2).</li> <li>• bg: TrainPosition_Types_Pck::positionedBG_T: The corresponding balise group in the case of an error.</li> </ul> |
|-----------------------|---|

---

Behaviour when value is n/a  
at boundary

---

Behaviour for values out n/a  
of valid range

---

Behaviour when value is n/a  
erroneous, absent or un-  
wanted

---

513 **5.7.3 Subcomponents**

514 **5.7.3.1 msg\_2\_passedBG**

515 **5.7.3.1.1 Component Requirements**

---

Component name msg\_2\_passedBG

---

Link to SCADE model <https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/ManageLocationRelatedInformation/TrainPosition/CalculateTrainPosition>

---

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| SCADE designer         | Uwe Steinke, Siemens AG   |
| Description            | Converts msgFromTrack from ReceivedMessage_T to passedBG_T and determines, if the message was received from a just overpassed balise group or if it only announces balise groups via radio. |
| Input documents        | n/a   |
| Safety integrity level | 4   |
| Time constraints       | n/a   |
| API requirements       | n/a   |

516 **5.7.3.1.2 Interface**

517 For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link  
 518 above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.

519 **5.7.3.2 calculateBGLocations**

520 **5.7.3.2.1 Component Requirements**

|                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| Component name         | calculateBGLocations   |
| Link to SCADE model    | <a href="https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/ManageLocationRelatedInformation/TrainPosition/CalculateTrainPosition">https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/ManageLocationRelatedInformation/TrainPosition/CalculateTrainPosition</a>  |
| SCADE designer         | Uwe Steinke, Siemens AG  |
| Description            | Calculates the location of a just overpassed balise group related to the list of all so far known balise groups. If the just overpassed balise group has been announced via linking (packet 5) previously, its location is adjusted to the best-of combination of linking and odometry information. If the just overpassed BG is a linked balise group, the locations of all known balise groups ahead and astern are recalculated with the just overpassed balise group as the one with minimized location uncertainties.<br><br>If the overpassed balise group announces balise groups ahead via linking (packet 5), these balise groups are added to the list of known balise groups. |
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter 3.6<br>Subset-026, Chapter 3.6.4   |
| Safety integrity level | 4  |
| Time constraints       | n/a  |
| API requirements       | n/a  |

521 **5.7.3.2.2 Interface**

522 For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link  
 523 above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.

524 **5.7.3.3 delDisposableBGs**

525 **5.7.3.3.1 Component Requirements**

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| Component name         | delDisposableBGs  |
| Link to SCADE model    | <a href="https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/ManageLocationRelatedInformation/TrainPosition/CalculateTrainPosition">https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/ManageLocationRelatedInformation/TrainPosition/CalculateTrainPosition</a> |
| SCADE designer         | Uwe Steinke, Siemens AG   |
| Description            | Deletes balise groups not needed any more from the list of known balise groups  |
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter 3.6.2.2.2 c)  |
| Safety integrity level | 4   |
| Time constraints       | n/a   |
| API requirements       | n/a   |

526 **5.7.3.3.2 Interface**

527 For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link  
 528 above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.

529 **5.7.3.4 addAnnouncedBGs**

530 **5.7.3.4.1 Component Requirements**

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| Component name         | addAnnouncedBGs   |
| Link to SCADE model    | <a href="https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/ManageLocationRelatedInformation/TrainPosition/CalculateTrainPosition">https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/ManageLocationRelatedInformation/TrainPosition/CalculateTrainPosition</a> |
| SCADE designer         | Uwe Steinke, Siemens AG   |
| Description            | When balise groups ahead are announced via radio, addAnnounced-BGs adds these balise groups to the list of known balises groups and calculates their locations.   |
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter 3.6   |
| Safety integrity level | 4   |
| Time constraints       | n/a   |

---

|                  |     |
|------------------|-----|
| API requirements | n/a |
|------------------|-----|

---

531 **5.7.3.4.2 Interface**

532 For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link  
533 above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.

534 **5.7.3.5 calculateTrainpositionInfo**

535 **5.7.3.5.1 Component Requirements**

---

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| Component name         | calculateTrainpositionInfo  |
| Link to SCADE model    | <a href="https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/ManageLocationRelatedInformation/TrainPosition/CalculateTrainPosition">https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/ManageLocationRelatedInformation/TrainPosition/CalculateTrainPosition</a>   |
| SCADE designer         | Uwe Steinke, Siemens AG   |
| Description            | Calculates the current train position based on the odometry and the list of known balise groups. Provides the last passed linked balised group and the linked balise group passed previously to the last passed linked balise group. Provides the last passed unlinked balise group. Determines, if linking is used on board. |
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter 3.6   |
| Safety integrity level | 4   |
| Time constraints       | n/a   |
| API requirements       | n/a   |

---

536 **5.7.3.5.2 Interface**

537 For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model  
538 (c.f. link above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.

539 **5.7.3.6 calculateTrainPositionAttributes**

540 **5.7.3.6.1 Component Requirements**

---

|                     |   |
|---------------------|---|
| Component name      | calculateTrainPositionAttributes  |
| Link to SCADE model | <a href="https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/ManageLocationRelatedInformation/TrainPosition/CalculateTrainPosition">https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/ManageLocationRelatedInformation/TrainPosition/CalculateTrainPosition</a> |
| SCADE designer      | Uwe Steinke, Siemens AG   |

---

|                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| Description            | Enhances the current train position information with additional attributes as if the train position is unknown, if no coordinate system has been assigned, the trains front end position with attributes, determines the LRBG and the previous LRBG, if the train front end is located nominal or reverse to the LRBG, the train orientation and the train movement direction. |
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter 3.6  |
| Safety integrity level | 4  |
| Time constraints       | n/a  |
| API requirements       | n/a  |

<sup>541</sup> **5.7.3.6.2 Interface**

<sup>542</sup> For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link  
<sup>543</sup> above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.

<sup>544</sup> **5.7.3.7 linkedBG\_missed**

<sup>545</sup> **5.7.3.7.1 Component Requirements**

|                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| Component name         | linkedBG_missed  |
| Link to SCADE model    | <a href="https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/ManageLocationRelatedInformation/TrainPosition/CalculateTrainPosition">https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/ManageLocationRelatedInformation/TrainPosition/CalculateTrainPosition</a>  |
| SCADE designer         | Uwe Steinke, Siemens AG  |
| Description            | Detects, when the range of a linked BG (where it is expected to be found) is left and the BG has not been passed yet. Steadily observes the current train position and detects, when the train leaves the expectation window of any BG. When this happens, checks whether it is a linked BG and has been marked as passed. If not, it was not found within its expectation window. |
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter 3.6<br>Subset-026, Chapter 3.16.2.3  |
| Safety integrity level | 4  |
| Time constraints       | n/a  |
| API requirements       | n/a  |

<sup>546</sup> **5.7.3.7.2 Interface**

<sup>547</sup> For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link  
<sup>548</sup> above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.

549 **5.7.3.8 twoconsecutiveLinkedBGs\_missed**

550 **5.7.3.8.1 Component Requirements**

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| Component name         | twoconsecutiveLinkedBGs_missed  |
| Link to SCADE model    | <a href="https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/ManageLocationRelatedInformation/TrainPosition/CalculateTrainPosition">https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/ManageLocationRelatedInformation/TrainPosition/CalculateTrainPosition</a> |
| SCADE designer         | Uwe Steinke, Siemens AG   |
| Description            | Detects, if 2 subsequent linked BGs are missed. The criterium is fulfilled, when 2 consecutive linked balise groups announced by linking have not been detected and the end of the expectation window of the second balise group has been passed.   |
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter 3.6<br>Subset-026, Chapter 3.16.2.3   |
| Safety integrity level | 4   |
| Time constraints       | n/a   |
| API requirements       | n/a   |

551 **5.7.3.8.2 Interface**

552 For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link  
553 above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.

**5.8 554 F2.7: SpeedSupervision\_Integration**

555 **5.8.1 Component Requirements**

|                     |   |
|---------------------|---|
| Component name      | SpeedSupervision_Integration  |
| Link to SCADE model | <a href="https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/SpeedSupervision">https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/SpeedSupervision</a> |
| SCADE designer      | Benjamin Beichler, University of Rostock<br>Christian Stahl, TWT<br>Thorsten Schulz, University of Rostock  |

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| Description            | <p>The task of SDM is to monitor the speed of the train and the train location and as such to ensure that the speed remains within the given speed and distance limits. This block is based on [1, Chapt. 3.13]. The integration node “SpeedSupervision_Integration” takes as input (1) movement related information such as train speed, train position and acceleration, (2) train related information such as brake information and train length, and (3) track related information such as speed and distance limits and national values.</p> <p>Based on this information a speed profile is calculated. Speed restrictions create target speeds (targets) that have to be followed. For each such target braking curves are generated to supervise at which location of the track the train must apply the brake. In case of no target restrictions the train may accelerate to the supervised maximum speed of the speed profile. These calculations lead to commands being sent to the driver and the brake system.</p> <p>The functionality is modeled using eight subcomponents, as shown in Figure 27, which are explained in Section 5.8.3.</p> <p>The current status of the analysis of “SDM” and a functional breakdown can be found in a separate document, SpeedSupervision_analysis.pdf.</p> |
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter 3.13: Speed and distance monitoring   |
| Safety integrity level | 4   |
| Time constraints       | n/a   |
| API requirements       | n/a   |

## 556 5.8.2 Interface

557 An overview of the interface of component SpeedSupervision\_integration is shown in Figure 27.  
 558 The inputs and outputs are described in detail in Section 5.8.2.1 respectively 5.8.2.2. Sub  
 559 components are described in Section 5.8.3.

### 560 5.8.2.1 Inputs

#### 561 5.8.2.1.1 National Values

|                       |  |
|-----------------------|--|
| Input name            | NationalValues   |
| Description           | This input is packet 3 or 203 of [1, Chapt. 8], describing the national values.  |
| Source                | TrackAtlas; current release, hard wired constant:<br>cP3NationalValuesUtrechtAmsterdam                                       |
| Type                  | P3_NationalValues_T  |
| Valid range of values | P3_NationalValues_T is a complex data type, valid ranges are specified in SRS Subset-026-7, no further checks are done here. |

Behaviour when value is n/a  
at boundary

Behaviour for values out n/a  
of valid range

Behaviour when value is Not checked; node must not be called without reasonable National  
erroneous, absent or un- Value.  
wanted (i.e. spurious)

#### **5.8.2.1.2 Train Position**

|                       |  |
|-----------------------|--|
| Input name            | TrainPosition  |
| Description           | This input is the current train position.  |
| Source                | calculateTrainPosition   |
| Type                  | trainPosition_T  |
| Valid range of values | <p>trainPosition_T is a complex data type. Value valid must not be false for proper function and it may not be properly checked in current release. Furthermore, reversing (decreasing positions, reverse flag set) is currently NOT supported and leads to undefined behaviour. No brake will be thrown in this occasion.</p> <div style="background-color: #e0f2e0; padding: 2px;">To be completed</div> |

Behaviour when value is Not checked, may overflow.  
at boundary

Behaviour for values out Currently not checked.  
of valid range

Behaviour when value is Not checked; node must not be called without reasonable position  
erroneous, absent or un- data. Valid flag is not checked (bug), as SDM has not yet imple-  
wanted (i.e. spurious) mented exception handling on unacceptable input data.

#### **5.8.2.1.3 Odometry**

|                       |   |
|-----------------------|---|
| Input name            | odometry                                      |
| Description           | This input is the odometry data.              |
| Source                | API_Odometry                                  |
| Type                  | odometry_T                                    |
| Valid range of values | <p>complex data type<br/>used fields are:</p> |

---

|   |  |
|---|--|
|   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- acceleration: Obu_BasicTypes_Pkg::A_internal_Type. No valid range defined, neither checked.</li> <li>- motionState: [noMotion   Motion] (enum type)</li> <li>- motionDirection: is NOT evaluated currently which leads to erroneous behaviour when driving anti-nominal direction.</li> </ul> |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | Possible overflow not evaluated.   |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | Not checked.   |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | Not handled, valid data is expected for valid function. Valid flag is not checked (bug), as SDM has not yet implemented exception handling on unacceptable input data.   |

---

564 **5.8.2.1.4 Train Properties**

---

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Input name  | trainProps  |
| Description   | This input is a set of train related properties.  |
| Source  | maintainTrainProperties   |
| Type  | trainProperties_T   |
| Valid range of values   | trainProperties_T is a complex type but referenced only d_baliseAntenna_2_frontend.nominal: Obu_BasicTypes_Pkg::L_internal_Type. No valid range defined, neither checked.             |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | n/a   |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | n/a   |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | Value is only evaluated in Level 1. Low values (e.g. invalid-default 0) will lead to early trip, brake and alike. Larger values will lead to late braking, possibly numeric overflow. |

---

565 **5.8.2.1.5 Train Data**

---

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Input name  | trainData   |
| Description | This input is a set of train related inputs from the TIU. |
| Source      | manageTrainData   |
| Type        | trainData_T   |

---

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Valid range of values   | trainData_T is a complex type. No valid range defined, neither checked. The source is trusted.  |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | n/a   |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | n/a   |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | Must be valid for SDM to function. Valid flag is not checked (bug), as SDM has not yet implemented exception handling on unacceptable input data. |

566 **5.8.2.1.6 Track Data**

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Input name  | dataFromTrackAtlas   |
| Description   | This input is a set of track related input data, containing the MRSP, the Gradient Profile and the Movement Authority. And its associated update flags to optimize data handling.  |
| Source  | TrackAtlas   |
| Type  | DataForSupervision_nextGen_t   |
| Valid range of values   | <p>DataForSupervision_nextGen_t is a wrapper for the three mentioned complex types. The fresh-flags are seen as an optimization hint. From specification, all three containers must contain valid data for SDM to function. Ranges or sanity are not checked. The source is trusted.</p> <p><b>MA</b> Must always contain a valid Movement Authority, else the brake is commanded.</p> <p><b>GradientProfile</b> As per SRS, this must always contain a valid description up to the end of the MA.</p> <p><b>MRSP</b> Must at least a profile for the train's maximum speed, if no other restriction is known.</p> |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | n/a  |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | If the MA is not valid the brake should be commanded.  |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | Absence of minimal MRSP is not detected but trusted. Validity of MA is not checked up front.   |

567 **5.8.2.2 Outputs**

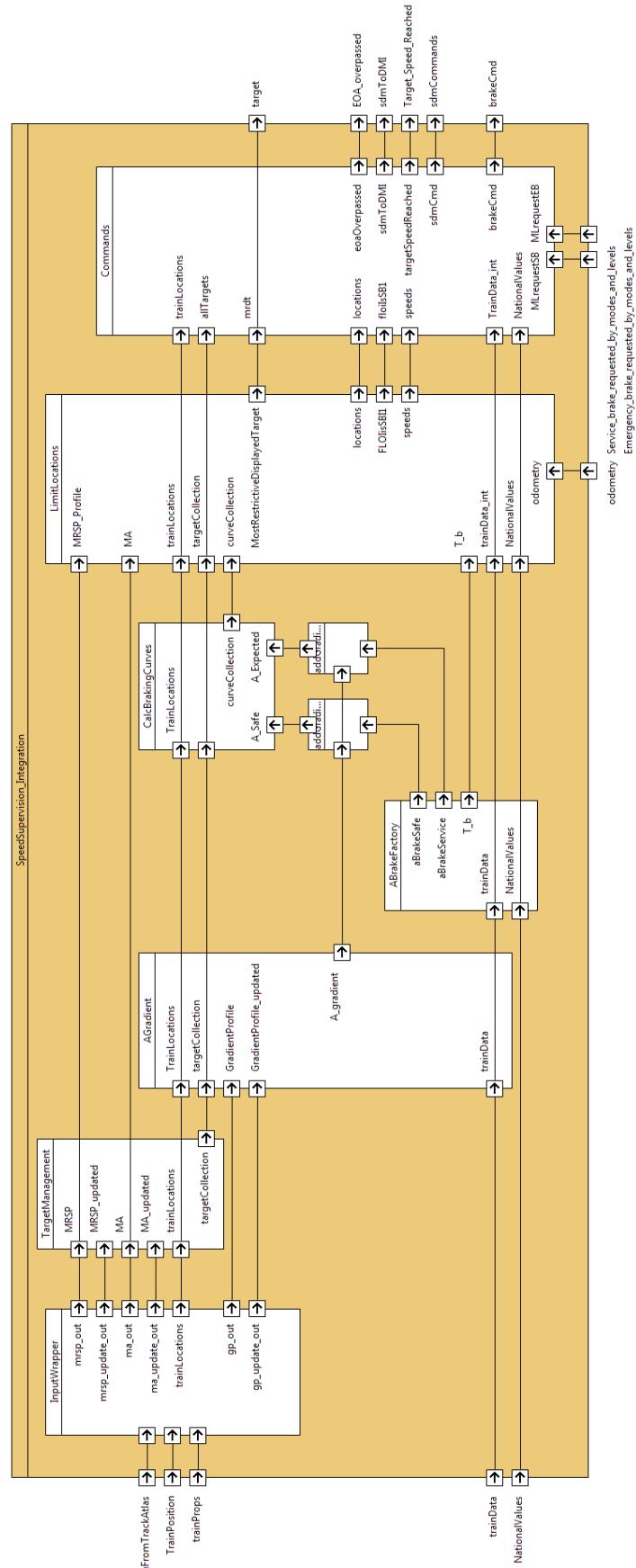


Figure 27. Structure of component SpeedSupervision\_Integration.

568 **5.8.2.2.1 sdmToDMI**

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Output name   | sdmToDMI  |
| Description   | This output contains information about different speeds and positions and the current supervision status. This information shall be displayed to the driver.  |
| Destination   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• TrackAtlas (<a href="#">5.5.2.1</a>)</li> <li>• manageDMI_output (<a href="#">31</a>)</li> <li>• ROOT_integration</li> </ul>   |
| Type  | speedSupervisionForDMI_T (complex)  |
| Valid range of values   | <p>speedSupervisionForDMI_T is a complex data type. Values are given for each element. Format is: Type Name: range/list of value.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• bool valid: [true, false] true, if internal state of speed monitoring is defined [CSM, TSM, RSM]; false, if it is undefined</li> <li>• V_internal_Type targetSpeed, permittedSpeed, releaseSpeed, interventionSpeed: 0 or above, not internally limited; set to cDMIUnknownSpeed (-1) if not defined</li> <li>• L_internal_Type location_brake_curve_starting_point, locationBrakeTarget, distanceIndicationPoint: calculated locations</li> <li>• M_SupervisionDisplay_T supervisionDisplay: [supDis_normal, supDis_indication, supDis_overspeed, supDis_warning, supDis_intervention]</li> <li>• M_SUPERVISION_STATUS sup_status: [CSM, TSM, RSM, unknown], PIM is not referenced</li> </ul> |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | n/a   |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | Location values may not be meaningful in some situations. This is not directly linked to the specific items but maybe accessible from further context such as supervisionDisplay and sup_status.  |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | Valid can be false in case of initialization. All values must be disregarded then.  |

569 **5.8.2.2.2 target**

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Output name | target   |
| Description | This output is the most restrictive displayed target (MRDT). |
| Destination | n/a, null-sink   |

| Type  | Target_T (complex)   |
|---|--|
| Valid range of values   | <p>Target_T is a complex data type. Values are given for each element. Format is: Type Name: range/list of value.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• bool valid: [true, false] true, if targetType is other than invalid</li> <li>• V_internal_Type speed: permitted speed from target location</li> <li>• L_internal_Type distance: location of brake target</li> <li>• TargetType_T targetType:</li> </ul> <p><b>EoA</b> End of Authority (speed must be = 0)<br/> <b>SvL</b> Supervised Location (speed must be = 0)<br/> <b>MRSP</b> Speed Profile, Speed restriction (speed &gt; 0)<br/> <b>LoA</b> Limit of Authority (speed &gt; 0)<br/> <b>invalid</b> currently no brake target known (e.g. after trip)</p> |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | n/a  |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | Valid target values of speed and distance are not artificially limited to a sane range and are passed through data from track input.   |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | .valid may be false if no target is supervised or known, other values of this output must be ignored then.   |

570 **5.8.2.2.3 sdmCommands**

|                                     |   |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| Output name                         | sdmCommands   |
| Description                         | This output gives some intermediate results of operator SDM_Commands. It is currently used for test purposes only.  |
| Destination                         | n/a, null-sink  |
| Type                                | SDM_Commands_T (complex)  |
| Valid range of values               | Containing values are either boolean command-trigger flags, the internal state of the SDM_commands state-machine or speed/distance types with guarding bool valid flag. For in-depth description see generated documentation. |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary | n/a   |

Behaviour for values out of valid range

- Bool are always in range.
- The internal state SupervisionStatus\_T is Undefined\_Supervision at initialization and renders the output sdmToDMI's valid flag to false.
- Speeds estimatedSpeed, permittedSpeed, releaseSpeed, mrdrt-Speed, sbiSpeed and distance targetDistance must be ignored and contain invalid values if the corresponding valid-flag is false. Valid-marked outputs are not artificially limited to a sane range and rely on correctly specified algorithms.

Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious)

Overall .valid is always set, individual speeds have their corresponding valid flag. Values may not have a valid output depending on the situation.

<sup>571</sup> **5.8.2.2.4 brakeCmd**

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Output name | brakeCmd  |
| Description | This output is the brake command, indicating whether performing the service brake and/or the emergency brake have been commanded.           |
| Destination | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• TIU_OutputIntegration (33)</li> <li>• manageDMI_output (31)</li> <li>• ROOT_integration</li> </ul> |
| Type        | Brake_command_T (complex)   |

---

|                       |  |
|-----------------------|--|
| Valid range of values | Brake_command_T is a complex data type. Values are given for each element. Format is: Type Name: range/list of value <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• bool valid: true (constant)</li> <li>• M_brake_signal_command_T m_servicebrake_cm:<br/><b>brake_signal_command_not_defined</b> No change of brake state requested, keep last.<br/><b>apply_brake</b> service brakes must be applied<br/><b>release_brake</b> service brakes must be released</li> <li>• M_brake_signal_command_T m_emergencybrake_cm:<br/><b>brake_signal_command_not_defined</b> No change of brake state requested, keep last.<br/><b>apply_brake</b> emergency brakes must be applied<br/><b>release_brake</b> emergency brakes must be released</li> </ul> <p>Brake commands are edge triggered and may only be defined in a single cycle.</p> |
|-----------------------|--|

---

Behaviour when value is n/a  
at boundary

Behaviour for values out n/a  
of valid range

Behaviour when value is brakeCmd is constantly valid, but may not contain a command erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) change.

#### 572 5.8.2.2.5 EOA\_overpassed

---

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Output name | EOA_overpassed   |
| Description | This output is true if the end of authority has been overpassed and false otherwise. In Level 1 this is compensated by the antenna offset. |
| Destination | n/a, null-sink in current release  |
| Type        | bool   |

---

Valid range of values

**true** The train's front end has passed the end of authority  
**false** The end of authority is ahead of the train.

Behaviour when value is n/a  
at boundary

Behaviour for values out n/a  
of valid range

Behaviour when value is n/a  
erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious)

---

<sup>573</sup> **5.8.2.2.6 Target\_Speed\_Reached**

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Output name  | Target_Speed_Reached  |
| Description  | This output is true if the current speed is greater than or equal the target speed and false otherwise. |
| Destination  | n/a, null-sink in current release   |
| Type   | bool  |
| Valid range of values  |   |
| <b>true</b> The current speed is greater than or equal to the target speed or target is invalid<br><b>false</b> The current speed is less than the target speed<br>Value must be ignored, if output target ( <a href="#">5.8.2.2.2</a> ) is invalid. |   |

Behaviour when value is n/a  
at boundary

---

Behaviour for values out n/a  
of valid range

---

Behaviour when value is n/a  
erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious)

---

<sup>574</sup> **5.8.3 Subcomponents**

<sup>575</sup> **5.8.3.1 SDM\_InputWrapper**

<sup>576</sup> **5.8.3.1.1 Component Requirements**

|                     |   |
|---------------------|---|
| Component name      | SDM_InputWrapper  |
| Link to SCADE model | <a href="https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/SpeedSupervision/SpeedSupervision_Integration">https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/SpeedSupervision/SpeedSupervision_Integration</a> |
| SCADE designer      | Benjamin Beichler, University of Rostock<br>Thorsten Schulz, University of Rostock  |

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| Description            | The motivation for this operator is to convert all inputs of SDM that contain information about length, speed, distance, and acceleration defined as integer into <code>real</code> to allow automatically the highest precision in the calculations by the meaning of floating point operations. In addition, to ease the modeling, inside block “Speed Supervision” only units meters ( $[m]$ ), seconds( $[s]$ ), meters per second( $\frac{m}{s}$ ), and meters per square second( $\frac{m}{s^2}$ ) are used.<br>This operator forwards input messages, takes data from complex data types or transforms inputs messages into an internal type thereby converting int to real. |
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter 3.13, (not specific, helper function)   |
| Safety integrity level | 4   |
| Time constraints       | n/a   |
| API requirements       | n/a   |

<sup>577</sup> **5.8.3.1.2 Interface**

<sup>578</sup> For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link  
<sup>579</sup> above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.

<sup>580</sup> **5.8.3.2 TargetManagement**

<sup>581</sup> **5.8.3.2.1 Component Requirements**

|                     |   |
|---------------------|---|
| Component name      | TargetManagement  |
| Link to SCADE model | <a href="https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/SpeedSupervision/TargetManagement">https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/SpeedSupervision/TargetManagement</a> |
| SCADE designer      | Benjamin Beichler, University of Rostock<br>Thorsten Schulz, University of Rostock  |

Description This operator calculates/updates the list of targets to be supervised by SDM. Taking the current movement authority, the most restrictive speed profile and the current maximum safe front end position as an input, the operator outputs a list of MRSP-Targets and a Limit-of-Authority-Target (LoA) or, if an End of Authority is known, the End-of-Authority-Target (EoA) and the Supervised Location (SvL). Since LoA and SvL are mutually exclusive but both result in a trip-target, they use the same flow.

### **Derivation of Targets from Movement Authority**

The *Movement Authority* creates three types of targets:

**Limit of Authority (LoA)** if the End of Authority is not yet known to the RBC and is accompanied by a speed limit for the given location.

**End Of Authority (EoA)** requires the train to stop and creates a Service Brake Target

**Supervised Location (SvL)** is derived from the EoA but results in an emergency brake target and on passing in a trip. The SvL may be offset from the EoA to the Overlap (OL) or the Dangerpoint (DP).

### **Derivation of Targets from MRSP**

According to [1, Chapt. 3.13.8.2], every speed decrease of the MRSP is used to derive a target. Therefore in every cycle in which the MRSP is updated, the operator iterates through the entire MRSP searching for all MRSP targets. For this purpose, every element of the MRSP is compared with its successor.

### **Update of Targets**

In every cycle the operator monitors whether all targets are already passed. To this end, it iterates over the list of targets comparing the current front end position with the target's location.

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter 3.13.8.2: Determination of the supervised targets |
| Safety integrity level | 4   |
| Time constraints       | n/a   |
| API requirements       | n/a   |

#### **5.8.3.2.2 Interface**

<sup>583</sup> For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.

#### **5.8.3.3 AGradient**

##### **5.8.3.3.1 Component Requirements**

|                |           |
|----------------|-----------|
| Component name | AGradient |
|----------------|-----------|

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| Link to SCADE model    | <a href="https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/SpeedSupervisionSDM_GradientAcceleration">https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/SpeedSupervisionSDM_GradientAcceleration</a> |
| SCADE designer         | Benjamin Beichler, University of Rostock  |
| Description            | This operator translates the incoming gradient profile from track data to acceleration values under consideration of train length compensation.   |
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter 3.13.4: Acceleration / Deceleration due to gradient   |
| Safety integrity level | 4   |
| Time constraints       | n/a   |
| API requirements       | n/a   |

<sup>587</sup> **5.8.3.3.2 Interface**

<sup>588</sup> For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link  
<sup>589</sup> above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.

<sup>590</sup> **5.8.3.4 ABrakeFactory**

<sup>591</sup> **5.8.3.4.1 Component Requirements**

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| Component name         | ABrakeFactory   |
| Link to SCADE model    | <a href="https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/SpeedSupervision/SDM_Models">https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/SpeedSupervision/SDM_Models</a>   |
| SCADE designer         | Thorsten Schulz, University of Rostock  |
| Description            | This operator implements the braking models. At this stage only the lamda trains (conversion) model is implemented. The output of the conversion model are a location independent, but highly National Values dependent, braking curves. One for the service brake and one for the emergency brake. As a side product, the model related brake build-up times are also generated. |
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter 3.13.2.2.3 Braking Models, Chapter 3.13.2.2.4,5 Brake Position, Percentage, Chapter 3.13.2.3.7 National Values for SDM, Chapter 3.13.3 Conversion Models, 3.13.6 Calculation of the deceleration and brake build-up times   |
| Safety integrity level | 4   |
| Time constraints       | n/a   |
| API requirements       | n/a   |

592 **5.8.3.4.2 Interface**

593 For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link  
 594 above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.

595 **5.8.3.5 addGradient**

596 **5.8.3.5.1 Component Requirements**

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| Component name         | addGradient   |
| Link to SCADE model    | <a href="https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/SpeedSupervision/SDM_Models">https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/SpeedSupervision/SDM_Models</a>   |
| SCADE designer         | Thorsten Schulz, University of Rostock  |
| Description            | This operator is part of SDM_Models and is merging the gradient acceleration into the curve brake model curve, producing a location dependent braking curve. It twice, for the emergency curve and the service braking curve respectively |
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter 3.13.6.2.1.3 and 3.13.6.4.3 Calculation of the deceleration and brake build-up times  |
| Safety integrity level | 4   |
| Time constraints       | n/a   |
| API requirements       | n/a   |

597 **5.8.3.5.2 Interface**

598 For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link  
 599 above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.

600 **5.8.3.6 CalcBrakingCurves\_Integration**

601 **5.8.3.6.1 Component Requirements**

|                     |   |
|---------------------|---|
| Component name      | CalcBrakingCurves_Integration   |
| Link to SCADE model | <a href="https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/SpeedSupervision/CalcBrakingCurves">https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/SpeedSupervision/CalcBrakingCurves</a> |
| SCADE designer      | Benjamin Beichler, University of Rostock  |

|                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| Description            | For each type of target a certain braking curve has to be calculated. This curve enables proactive monitoring of the train's speed. A reverse lookup on this braking curve indicates, where the train has to start braking given the current speed. The braking curve does not depend on the actual train status. As a consequence the braking curve stays constant over time. As a legitimate simplification the calculation of the braking curve is not extended past the estimated front end position of the train. |
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter 3.13.8.3: Emergency Brake Deceleration curves (EBD)<br>Subset-026, Chapter 3.13.8.4: Service Brake Deceleration curves (SBD)<br>Subset-026, Chapter 3.13.8.5: Guidance curves (GUI)  |
| Safety integrity level | 4  |
| Time constraints       | n/a  |
| API requirements       | n/a  |

602 **5.8.3.6.2 Interface**

603 For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link  
 604 above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.

605 **5.8.3.7 SDMLimitLocations**

606 **5.8.3.7.1 Component Requirements**

|                     |   |
|---------------------|---|
| Component name      | SDMLimitLocations   |
| Link to SCADE model | <a href="https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/SpeedSupervision/SDM_TargetLimits">https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/SpeedSupervision/SDM_TargetLimits</a> |
| SCADE designer      | Thorsten Schulz, University of Rostock  |

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| Description            | <p>This operator calculates the various locations and speeds needed to determine the speed and distance monitoring commands. The current implementation of functionality is stateless and requires a complete recalculation each cycle.</p> <p>This operator gathers all necessary input values and computes some frequently used intermediate values in the operators <code>surplusTractionDeltas</code> and <math>v_{bec}</math>. The other input preparation operator is the <code>TargetSelector</code> whose main task is to dissect the list of targets to find the Most Restrictive Target. The accompanying braking curves are extracted and promoted to trailing location calculations. Also the special values of the EOA are exposed.</p> <p>The operator creates the requested values for the commands package. These are in particular the preindication locations for EBD and SBD based targets, the release speed monitoring start locations, the locations for target speed monitoring of the I-, W-, P- and FLOI-curve, the related FLOI speed and the location of the permitted speed supervision limit. Included in the output are also certain flags for the validity of linked values.</p> |
| Input documents        | <p>Subset-026, Chapter 3.13.9: Supervision Limits<br/>           Subset-026, Chapter 5.3.1.2: <math>f_{41}</math> – accuracy of speed known on-board<br/>           Subset-026, Chapter 3.13.10: Monitoring Commands as reference for required outputs of this module</p>   |
| Safety integrity level | 4   |
| Time constraints       | n/a   |
| API requirements       | n/a   |

### 607 5.8.3.7.2 Interface

608 For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link  
 609 above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.

### 610 5.8.3.8 SDM\_Commands

#### 611 5.8.3.8.1 Component Requirements

|                     |   |
|---------------------|---|
| Component name      | SDM_Commands  |
| Link to SCADE model | <a href="https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/SpeedSupervision/SDM_Commands">https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/SpeedSupervision/SDM_Commands</a> |
| SCADE designer      | Christian Stahl, TWT<br>Thorsten Schulz, University of Rostock  |

|                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| Description            | This operator models the speed and distance monitoring commands. More precisely, it triggers the service or emergency brake and outputs the current supervision status of the OBU together with information on speeds and locations to the driver.<br>The OBU can be in any of three types of speed and distance monitoring modes: ceiling speed monitoring, release speed monitoring and target speed monitoring. We use a state machine to model the switching between the three modes: each state models a mode and a transition between states is enabled if the condition two switch between the two corresponding modes is evaluated to true. In each mode, the OBU can be in up to five different supervision states. The behavior of changing from one status to another is also modeled as a state machine. As a result, the model is a hierarchical state machine. |
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter 3.13.10: Speed and distance monitoring commands  |
| Safety integrity level | 4  |
| Time constraints       | n/a  |
| API requirements       | n/a  |

612 **5.8.3.8.2 Interface**

613 For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link  
 614 above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.

**5.9<sub>615</sub> F2.8: Provide\_Position\_Report**

616 **5.9.1 Component Requirements**

|                     |   |
|---------------------|---|
| Component name      | Provide_Position_Report   |
| Link to SCADE model | <a href="https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/blob/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/ManageLocationRelatedInformation/TrainPosition/ProvidePositionReport/ProvidePositionReport_Pkg.xscade">https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/blob/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/ManageLocationRelatedInformation/TrainPosition/ProvidePositionReport/ProvidePositionReport_Pkg.xscade</a>   |
| SCADE designer      | Christian Stahl, TWT GmbH   |
| Description         | <p>The component builds a position report for the RBC, i.e., message 132, and provides it as an output. There are two triggers for sending message 132:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. at least one of the triggers of the position report parameters (packet 58) holds or</li> <li>2. one of the events enabling the sending of the report occurs.</li> </ol> <p>As the core position report (i.e., packet 0 or 1) is included in other packets, the component also provides this core position report at every clock cycle. At most one of the two packets is valid.</p> |

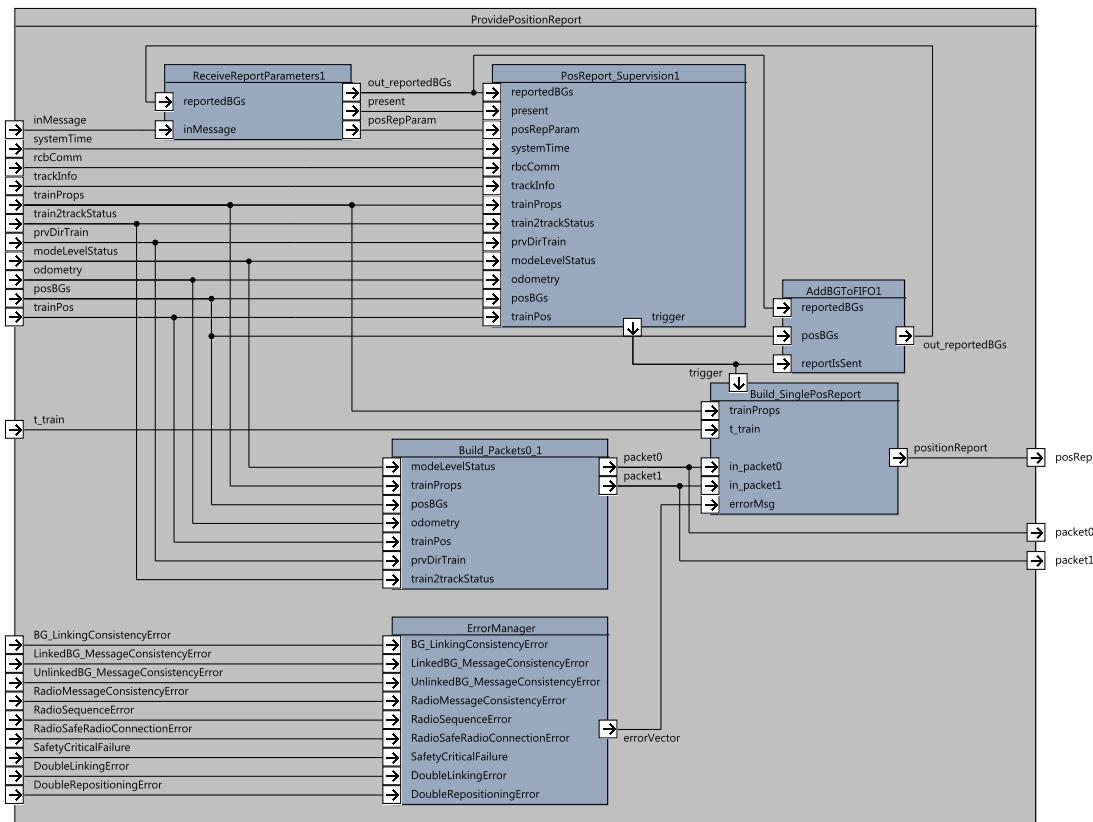


Figure 28. Provide\_Position\_Report component SysML diagram

|                        |                           |
|------------------------|---------------------------|
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter 3.6.5 |
| Safety integrity level | 4                         |
| Time constraints       | n/a                       |
| API requirements       | n/a                       |

### 617 5.9.2 Interface

618 An overview of the interface of component Provide\_Position\_Report is shown in Figure 28. The  
 619 inputs and outputs are described in detail in Section 5.9.2.1 respectively 5.9.2.2. Subcomponents  
 620 are described in Section 5.9.3.

#### 621 5.9.2.1 Inputs

##### 622 5.9.2.1.1 inMessage

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Input name  | inMessage  |
| Description | Input message from the bus (to extract Packet 58, the position report parameters).       |
| Source      | Manage_TrackSideInformation_Integration_Pkg::<br>Manage_TrackSideInformation_Integration |

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Type  | Common_Types_Pkg::ReceivedMessage_T       |
| Valid range of values   | as defined in SCADE                       |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | n/a                                       |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | n/a                                       |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | If valid is false, then input is ignored. |

623 **5.9.2.1.2 systemTime**

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Input name  | systemTime  |
| Description   | The system time.  |
| Source  | API   |
| Type  | SystemTime_T, i.e., Obu_BasicTypes_Pkg::T_internal_Type |
| Valid range of values   | [0; maximum positive int value of target platform]      |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | assumed to be valid                                     |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | assumed to be valid                                     |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | assumed to be valid                                     |

624 **5.9.2.1.3 rbcComm**

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Input name                              | rbcComm   |
| Description                             | Variables modeling stati regarding the RBC communication. |
| Source                                  | MoRC_Pck::MoRC_Main                                       |
| Type                                    | RBC_Communication_T                                       |
| Valid range of values                   | as defined in SCADE                                       |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary     | n/a   |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range | n/a   |

Behaviour when value is n/a  
erroneous, absent or un-  
wanted (i.e. spurious)

---

<sup>625</sup> **5.9.2.1.4 trackInfo**

|   |                           |
|---|---------------------------|
| Input name  | trackInfo                 |
| Description   | Location based events.    |
| Source  | EVC; currently a constant |
| Type  | LocationBasedEvents_T     |
| Valid range of values   | as defined in SCADE       |
| Behaviour when value is n/a<br>at boundary  |                           |
| Behaviour for values out n/a<br>of valid range                                    |                           |
| Behaviour when value is n/a<br>erroneous, absent or un-<br>wanted (i.e. spurious) |                           |

---

<sup>626</sup> **5.9.2.1.5 trainProps**

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Input name  | trainProps                                 |
| Description   | The train properties.                      |
| Source  | EVC_Support_Pkg::maintainTrainProperties   |
| Type  | TrainPosition_Types_Pck::trainProperties_T |
| Valid range of values   | as defined in SCADE                        |
| Behaviour when value is n/a<br>at boundary  |  |
| Behaviour for values out n/a<br>of valid range                                    |  |
| Behaviour when value is n/a<br>erroneous, absent or un-<br>wanted (i.e. spurious) |  |

---

<sup>627</sup> **5.9.2.1.6 train2trackStatus**

Input name                    train2trackStatus

---

|   |                                    |
|---|------------------------------------|
| Description   | Train to track status information. |
| Source  | EVC                                |
| Type  | BG_Types_Pkg::TrainToTrackStatus_T |
| Valid range of values   | as defined in SCADE                |
| Behaviour when value is n/a at boundary                                   |                                    |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                                   | n/a                                |
| Behaviour when value is n/a erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | n/a                                |

628 **5.9.2.1.7 prvDirTrain**

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Input name  | prvDirTrain  |
| Description   | Train direction of the last clock cycle.           |
| Source  | CalculateTrainPosition_Pkg::calculateTrainPosition |
| Type  | Q_DIRTRAIN   |
| Valid range of values   | as defined in SCADE                                |
| Behaviour when value is n/a at boundary                                   |  |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                                   | n/a  |
| Behaviour when value is n/a erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | n/a  |

629 **5.9.2.1.8 modeLevelStatus**

|                       |   |
|-----------------------|---|
| Input name            | modeLevelStatus                                 |
| Description           | Information referring to mode and level status. |
| Source                | ManageLevelAndMode                              |
| Type                  | ModeLevel2PositionReport_T                      |
| Valid range of values | as defined in SCADE                             |

---

Behaviour when value is n/a  
at boundary

---

Behaviour for values out n/a  
of valid range

---

Behaviour when value is n/a  
erroneous, absent or un-  
wanted (i.e. spurious)

**630 5.9.2.1.9 odometry**

---



---

Input name odometry

---

Description Odometry information.

---

Source API

---

Type Obu\_BasicTypes\_Pkg::odometry\_T

---

Valid range of values as defined in SCADE

---

Behaviour when value is n/a  
at boundary

---

Behaviour for values out n/a  
of valid range

---

Behaviour when value is n/a  
erroneous, absent or un-  
wanted (i.e. spurious)

**631 5.9.2.1.10 posBGs**

---



---

Input name posBGs

---

Description Positioned balise groups used for current train position.

---

Source CalculateTrainPosition\_Pkg::calculateTrainPosition

---

Type TrainPosition\_Types\_Pck::positionedBGs\_T

---

Valid range of values as defined in SCADE

---

Behaviour when value is n/a  
at boundary

---

Behaviour for values out n/a  
of valid range

---

Behaviour when value is n/a  
erroneous, absent or un-  
wanted (i.e. spurious)

632 **5.9.2.1.11 trainPos**

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Input name  | trainPos   |
| Description   | Current train position.                            |
| Source  | CalculateTrainPosition_Pkg::calculateTrainPosition |
| Type  | TrainPosition_Types_Pck::trainPosition_T           |
| Valid range of values   | as defined in SCADE                                |
| Behaviour when value is n/a at boundary                               |  |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | n/a  |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | n/a  |

633 **5.9.2.1.12 t\_train**

|   |                     |
|---|---------------------|
| Input name  | t_train             |
| Description   | Current timestamp.  |
| Source  | EVC                 |
| Type  | T_TRAIN             |
| Valid range of values   | as defined in SCADE |
| Behaviour when value is n/a at boundary                               |                     |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | n/a                 |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | n/a                 |

634 **5.9.2.1.13 BG\_LinkingConsistencyError**

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Input name  | BG_LinkingConsistencyError                              |
| Description | True if respective error has occurred; otherwise false. |
| Source      | CalculateTrainPosition_Pkg::calculateTrainPosition      |
| Type        | bool  |

|   |                     |
|---|---------------------|
| Valid range of values   | as defined in SCADE |
| Behaviour when value is n/a at boundary                                   |                     |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                                   | n/a                 |
| Behaviour when value is n/a erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) |                     |

635 **5.9.2.1.14 LinkedBG\_MessageConsistencyError**

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Input name  | LinkedBG_MessageConsistencyError   |
| Description   | True if respective error has occurred; otherwise false.                                  |
| Source  | Manage_TrackSideInformation_Integration_Pkg::<br>Manage_TrackSideInformation_Integration |
| Type  | bool   |
| Valid range of values   | as defined in SCADE  |
| Behaviour when value is n/a at boundary                                   |  |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                                   | n/a  |
| Behaviour when value is n/a erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) |  |

636 **5.9.2.1.15 UnlinkedBG\_MessageConsistencyError**

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Input name                              | UnlinkedBG_MessageConsistencyError   |
| Description                             | True if respective error has occurred; otherwise false.                                  |
| Source                                  | Manage_TrackSideInformation_Integration_Pkg::<br>Manage_TrackSideInformation_Integration |
| Type                                    | bool   |
| Valid range of values                   | as defined in SCADE  |
| Behaviour when value is n/a at boundary |  |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range | n/a  |

---

Behaviour when value is n/a  
erroneous, absent or un-  
wanted (i.e. spurious)

---

#### **637 5.9.2.1.16 RadioMessageConsistencyError**

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Input name  | RadioMessageConsistencyError   |
| Description   | True if respective error has occurred; otherwise false.                                  |
| Source  | Manage_TrackSideInformation_Integration_Pkg::<br>Manage_TrackSideInformation_Integration |
| Type  | bool   |
| Valid range of values   | as defined in SCADE  |
| Behaviour when value is n/a<br>at boundary  |  |
| Behaviour for values out n/a<br>of valid range                                    |  |
| Behaviour when value is n/a<br>erroneous, absent or un-<br>wanted (i.e. spurious) |  |

---

#### **638 5.9.2.1.17 RadioSequenceError**

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Input name  | RadioSequenceError   |
| Description   | True if respective error has occurred; otherwise false.                                  |
| Source  | Manage_TrackSideInformation_Integration_Pkg::<br>Manage_TrackSideInformation_Integration |
| Type  | bool   |
| Valid range of values   | as defined in SCADE  |
| Behaviour when value is n/a<br>at boundary  |  |
| Behaviour for values out n/a<br>of valid range                                    |  |
| Behaviour when value is n/a<br>erroneous, absent or un-<br>wanted (i.e. spurious) |  |

---

<sup>639</sup> **5.9.2.1.18 RadioSafeRadioConnectionError**

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Input name  | RadioSafeRadioConnectionError                           |
| Description   | True if respective error has occurred; otherwise false. |
| Source  | none; currently a constant                              |
| Type  | bool  |
| Valid range of values   | as defined in SCADE                                     |
| Behaviour when value is n/a at boundary                               |   |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | n/a   |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | n/a   |

<sup>640</sup> **5.9.2.1.19 SafetyCriticalFailure**

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Input name  | SafetyCriticalFailure                                   |
| Description   | True if respective error has occurred; otherwise false. |
| Source  | EVC; currently a constant                               |
| Type  | bool  |
| Valid range of values   | as defined in SCADE                                     |
| Behaviour when value is n/a at boundary                               |   |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | n/a   |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | n/a   |

<sup>641</sup> **5.9.2.1.20 DoubleLinkingError**

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Input name  | DoubleLinkingError                                      |
| Description | True if respective error has occurred; otherwise false. |
| Source      | CalculateTrainPosition_Pkg::calculateTrainPosition      |
| Type        | bool  |

---

|                       |                     |
|-----------------------|---------------------|
| Valid range of values | as defined in SCADE |
|-----------------------|---------------------|

---

|                                     |     |
|-------------------------------------|-----|
| Behaviour when value is at boundary | n/a |
|-------------------------------------|-----|

---

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Behaviour for values out of valid range | n/a |
|---|-----|

---

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | n/a |
|---|-----|

---

<sup>642</sup> **5.9.2.1.21 DoubleRepositioningError**

---

|            |                          |
|------------|--------------------------|
| Input name | DoubleRepositioningError |
|------------|--------------------------|

---

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Description | True if respective error has occurred; otherwise false. |
|-------------|---|

---

|        |  |
|--------|--|
| Source | CalculateTrainPosition_Pkg::calculateTrainPosition |
|--------|--|

---

|      |      |
|------|------|
| Type | bool |
|------|------|

---

|                       |                     |
|-----------------------|---------------------|
| Valid range of values | as defined in SCADE |
|-----------------------|---------------------|

---

|                                     |     |
|-------------------------------------|-----|
| Behaviour when value is at boundary | n/a |
|-------------------------------------|-----|

---

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Behaviour for values out of valid range | n/a |
|---|-----|

---

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | n/a |
|---|-----|

---

<sup>643</sup> **5.9.2.2 Outputs**

---

<sup>644</sup> **5.9.2.2.1 packet0**

---

|             |         |
|-------------|---------|
| Output name | packet0 |
|-------------|---------|

---

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Description | Packet 0 – position report based on a single balise – is provided every clock cycle. |
|-------------|--|

---

|             |                        |
|-------------|------------------------|
| Destination | TrackAtlas::TrackAtlas |
|-------------|------------------------|

---

|      |   |
|------|---|
| Type | Packet_TrainTypes_Pkg::PT0_PositionReport_T |
|------|---|

---

|                       |                     |
|-----------------------|---------------------|
| Valid range of values | as defined in SCADE |
|-----------------------|---------------------|

---

|                                     |     |
|-------------------------------------|-----|
| Behaviour when value is at boundary | n/a |
|-------------------------------------|-----|

---

Behaviour for values out n/a  
of valid range

Behaviour when value is n/a  
erroneous, absent or un-  
wanted (i.e. spurious)

#### **645 5.9.2.2.2 packet1**

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Output name   | packet1  |
| Description   | Packet 1 – position report based on two balise groups – is provided every clock cycle. |
| Destination   | TrackAtlas::TrackAtlas   |
| Type  | Packet_TrainTypes_Pkg::PT1_PositionReport_2BG_T  |
| Valid range of values   | as defined in SCADE  |
| Behaviour when value is n/a<br>at boundary  |  |
| Behaviour for values out n/a<br>of valid range                                    |  |
| Behaviour when value is n/a<br>erroneous, absent or un-<br>wanted (i.e. spurious) |  |

#### **646 5.9.2.2.3 posRep**

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Output name   | posRep   |
| Description   | Position report to be send to the RBC, i.e. message 136. |
| Destination   | radioOutput_Pkg::collectRadioMessages                    |
| Type  | Radio_Types_Pkg::Radio_TrainTrack_Message_T              |
| Valid range of values   | as defined in SCADE                                      |
| Behaviour when value is n/a<br>at boundary  |  |
| Behaviour for values out n/a<br>of valid range                                    |  |
| Behaviour when value is n/a<br>erroneous, absent or un-<br>wanted (i.e. spurious) |  |

647 **5.9.3 Subcomponents**

648 **5.9.3.1 ReceiveReportParameters**

649 **5.9.3.1.1 Component Requirements**

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| Component name         | ReceiveReportParameters   |
| Link to SCADE model    | <a href="https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/blob/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/ManageLocationRelatedInformation/TrainPosition/ProvidePositionReport/ProvidePositionReport_Pkg.xscade">https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/blob/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/ManageLocationRelatedInformation/TrainPosition/ProvidePositionReport/ProvidePositionReport_Pkg.xscade</a> |
| SCADE designer         | Christian Stahl, TWT  |
| Description            | The component reads the position report parameters (i.e., packet 58) from the message bus. When a report is received, the BG information provided is used to update the location of respective BG. This BG is being stored in the list of the last 8 BGs.   |
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter 3.6.5   |
| Safety integrity level | 4   |
| Time constraints       | n/a   |
| API requirements       | n/a   |

650 **5.9.3.1.2 Interface**

651 For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link  
 652 above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.

653 **5.9.3.2 PosReport\_Supervision**

654 **5.9.3.2.1 Component Requirements**

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| Component name         | PosReport_Supervision   |
| Link to SCADE model    | <a href="https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/blob/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/ManageLocationRelatedInformation/TrainPosition/ProvidePositionReport/ProvidePositionReport_Pkg.xscade">https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/blob/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/ManageLocationRelatedInformation/TrainPosition/ProvidePositionReport/ProvidePositionReport_Pkg.xscade</a> |
| SCADE designer         | Christian Stahl, TWT  |
| Description            | The component supervises trigger (i.e., position report parameter) and events that trigger the sending of a position report. If the output is true, then a report has to be sent.   |
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter 3.6.5   |
| Safety integrity level | 4   |

|                  |     |
|------------------|-----|
| Time constraints | n/a |
| API requirements | n/a |

655 **5.9.3.2.2 Interface**

656 For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link  
 657 above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.

658 **5.9.3.3 ErrorManager**

659 **5.9.3.3.1 Component Requirements**

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| Component name         | ErrorManager  |
| Link to SCADE model    | <a href="https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/blob/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/ManageLocationRelatedInformation/TrainPosition/ProvidePositionReport/PositionReportErrorManager_Pkg.xscade">https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/blob/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/ManageLocationRelatedInformation/TrainPosition/ProvidePositionReport/PositionReportErrorManager_Pkg.xscade</a> |
| SCADE designer         | Christian Stahl, TWT  |
| Description            | The component takes all nine possible error messages as an input and aggregates them to a vector.   |
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter 3.6.5   |
| Safety integrity level | 4   |
| Time constraints       | n/a   |
| API requirements       | n/a   |

660 **5.9.3.3.2 Interface**

661 For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link  
 662 above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.

663 **5.9.3.4 Build\_Packets0\_1**

664 **5.9.3.4.1 Component Requirements**

|                     |   |
|---------------------|---|
| Component name      | Build_Packets0_1  |
| Link to SCADE model | <a href="https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/blob/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/ManageLocationRelatedInformation/TrainPosition/ProvidePositionReport/ProvidePositionReport_Pkg.xscade">https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/blob/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/ManageLocationRelatedInformation/TrainPosition/ProvidePositionReport/ProvidePositionReport_Pkg.xscade</a> |
| SCADE designer      | Christian Stahl, TWT  |
| Description         | The component builds packets 0 and 1; at most one of them is valid.   |

---

|                        |                           |
|------------------------|---------------------------|
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter 3.6.5 |
| Safety integrity level | 4                         |
| Time constraints       | n/a                       |
| API requirements       | n/a                       |

---

665 **5.9.3.4.2 Interface**

666 For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link  
 667 above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.

668 **5.9.3.5 Build\_PosReport**

669 **5.9.3.5.1 Component Requirements**

---

|                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| Component name         | Build_PosReport  |
| Link to SCADE model    | <a href="https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/blob/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/ManageLocationRelatedInformation/TrainPosition/ProvidePositionReport/ProvidePositionReport_Pkg.xscade">https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/blob/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/ManageLocationRelatedInformation/TrainPosition/ProvidePositionReport/ProvidePositionReport_Pkg.xscade</a>  |
| SCADE designer         | Christian Stahl, TWT   |
| Description            | This operator builds nine position report messages – there can be up to nine errors, and for each error an individual report has to be sent. The fold operator ensures that the first report is invalid if the first error is not present but there exists an error in the error field. In other words, one valid report will be built. If the errorVector does not contain a single error, then at least one report needs to be built (if the operator is triggered). |
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter 3.6.5  |
| Safety integrity level | 4  |
| Time constraints       | n/a  |
| API requirements       | n/a  |

---

670 **5.9.3.5.2 Interface**

671 For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link  
 672 above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.

673 **5.9.3.6 AddBGToFIFO**

674 **5.9.3.6.1 Component Requirements**

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| Component name         | AddBGToFIFO   |
| Link to SCADE model    | <a href="https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/blob/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/ManageLocationRelatedInformation/TrainPosition/ProvidePositionReport/ProvidePositionReport_Pkg.xscade">https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/blob/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/ManageLocationRelatedInformation/TrainPosition/ProvidePositionReport/ProvidePositionReport_Pkg.xscade</a> |
| SCADE designer         | Christian Stahl, TWT  |
| Description            | The component adds the current reported BG to the list of BGs for which a report has been sent. Adding of this BG is performed according to the FIFO method.  |
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter 3.6.5   |
| Safety integrity level | 4   |
| Time constraints       | n/a   |
| API requirements       | n/a   |

675 **5.9.3.6.2 Interface**

676 For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link  
 677 above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.

**5.10 F2.9: Manage\_Radio\_Communication and RBC\_Handover**

679 **5.10.1 Component Requirements**

|                     |   |
|---------------------|---|
| Component name      | MoRC_HO   |
| Link to SCADE model | <a href="https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/Radio/MoRC_HO">https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/Radio/MoRC_HO</a> |
| SCADE designer      | Uwe Steinke, Siemens AG   |

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Description | <p>The <i>MoRC_HO</i> component implements the handover process between two different RBCs and the session management (<i>MoRC</i> = management of radio communication) with each of them.</p> <p><i>MoRC_HO</i> comprises</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• the <i>processHandingOver</i> subcomponent performing the handover process from the handing over RBC to the accepting RBC,</li> <li>• two instances of <i>MoRC_Main_v2</i> representing the session management with up to two RBCs in parallel</li> <li>• a <i>mobileDataRouter_out</i> subcomponent for routing the OBUs output data stream to both RBCs and switching over from the handing over RBC to the accepting RBC.</li> </ul> <p><i>processHandingOver</i> consumes the relevant messages received from track and controls the registration with the radio network, the session termination with the handing over RBC and the session establishment with the accepting RBC. To achieve this, it controls up to two instances of <i>MoRC_Main_v2</i>. Additionally, it monitors the current train position and performs the handing over at the ordered track location. The number of MoRC instances used is configurable and depends on the number of mobile modems (1 or 2 ) available on board.</p> <p>The management of radio communication <i>MoRC_Main_v2</i> implements the onboard management part of a single communication session with the track, i.e. a single RBC. It controls the establishing, maintaining and termination process of a radio communication session and steers the underlying communication safety layer and the mobile device. Those and the data transfer itself are not part of the function.</p> <p><i>MoRC_HO</i> requests position reports to be sent to the appropriate RBC and cooperates with the <i>InformationFilter</i> component for input data stream filtering and buffering as required by the handover process.</p> |
|-------------|--|

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter 3.5<br>Subset-026, Chapter 3.15<br>Subset-026, Chapter 5.15 |
| Safety integrity level | 4   |
| Time constraints       | Function activation has to facilitate the internally implemented time delays    |
| API requirements       | Interfaces with the OBUs mobile modems via API                                  |

## 680 5.10.2 Interface

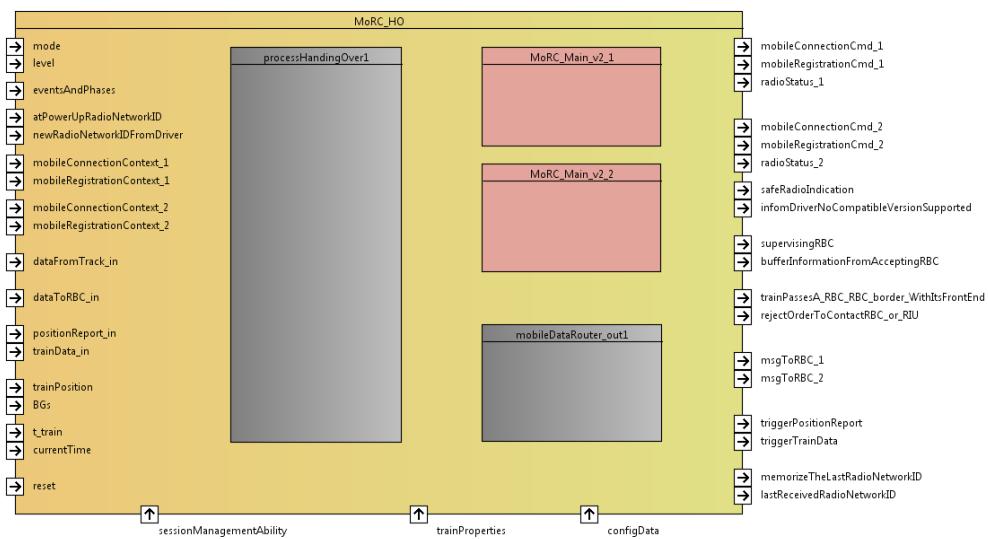


Figure 29. Manage\_Radio\_Communication component SysML diagram

681 An overview of the interface of component MoRC\_HO is shown in Figure 29. The inputs and  
 682 outputs are described in detail in Section 5.10.2.1 respectively 5.10.2.2. Sub components are  
 683 described in Section 5.10.3.

#### 684 5.10.2.1 Inputs

##### 685 5.10.2.1.1 [mode]

|   |                                |
|---|--------------------------------|
| Input name  | mode                           |
| Description   | Current onboard operating mode |
| Source  | ???                            |
| Type  | M_MODE                         |
| Valid range of values   | Defined by M_MODE enumerations |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | n/a                            |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | Code generation fails          |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | Misbehaviour                   |

##### 686 5.10.2.1.2 [level]

|   |                                 |
|---|---------------------------------|
| Input name  | level                           |
| Description   | Current Operating Level         |
| Source  | ???                             |
| Type  | M_LEVEL                         |
| <i>This work is licensed under the "openETCS Open License Terms" (oOLT)</i> |                                 |
| Valid range of values   | Defined by M_LEVEL enumerations |
| Behaviour when value is n/a   |                                 |

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Description   | Collection of input events and OBU operating phases             |
| Source  | Collection of source components responsible for the information |
| Type  | RCM_Session_Types_Pkg::obuEventsAndPhases_T                     |
| Valid range of values   | n/a   |
| Behaviour when value is n/a at boundary                               |   |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | Code generation fails   |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | Misbehaviour  |

688 **5.10.2.1.4 [atPowerUpRadioNetworkID]**

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Input name  | atPowerUpRadioNetworkID                          |
| Description   | Radio network ID to be used at power up          |
| Source  | ???  |
| Type  | Packet_Types_Pkg::P45_RadioNetworkRegistration_T |
| Valid range of values   | Ref. to NID_MN (Identity of Radio Network)       |
| Behaviour when value is n/a at boundary                               |  |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | OBUs registers to unwanted radio network         |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | OBUs registers to unwanted radio network         |

689 **5.10.2.1.5 [newRadioNetworkIDFromDriver]**

|                       |  |
|-----------------------|--|
| Input name            | newRadioNetworkIDFromDriver                      |
| Description           | Radio network ID entered by the driver           |
| Source                | ???  |
| Type                  | Packet_Types_Pkg::P45_RadioNetworkRegistration_T |
| Valid range of values | Ref. to NID_MN (Identity of Radio Network)       |

Behaviour when value is n/a  
at boundary

Behaviour for values out of valid range OBU registers to unwanted radio network

Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) OBU registers to unwanted radio network

<sup>690</sup> **5.10.2.1.6 [mobileRegistrationContext\_1]**

Input name mobileRegistrationContext\_1

Description Current registration status information from mobile modem 1

Source API

Type RCM\_Types\_Pkg::mobileRegistrationContext\_T

Valid range of values n/a

Behaviour when value is n/a  
at boundary

Behaviour for values out of valid range Misbehaviour

Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) Misbehaviour

<sup>691</sup> **5.10.2.1.7 [mobileRegistrationContext\_2]**

Input name mobileRegistrationContext\_2

Description Current registration status information from mobile modem 2

Source API

Type RCM\_Types\_Pkg::mobileRegistrationContext\_T

Valid range of values n/a

Behaviour when value is n/a  
at boundary

Behaviour for values out of valid range Misbehaviour

Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) Misbehaviour

692 **5.10.2.1.8 [mobileConnectionContext\_1]**

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Input name  | mobileConnectionContext_2                                 |
| Description   | Current connection status information from mobile modem 1 |
| Source  | API   |
| Type  | RCM_Types_Pkg::mobileConnectionContext_T                  |
| Valid range of values   | n/a   |
| Behaviour when value is n/a at boundary                               |   |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | Misbehaviour  |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | Misbehaviour  |

693 **5.10.2.1.9 [mobileConnectionContext\_2]**

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Input name  | mobileConnectionContext_2                                 |
| Description   | Current connection status information from mobile modem 2 |
| Source  | API   |
| Type  | RCM_Types_Pkg::mobileConnectionContext_T                  |
| Valid range of values   | n/a   |
| Behaviour when value is n/a at boundary                               |   |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | Misbehaviour  |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | Misbehaviour  |

694 **5.10.2.1.10 [dataFromTrack\_in]**

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Input name  | [dataFromTrack_in]                      |
| Description | Messages received from track            |
| Source      | Manage_TrackSideInformation_Integration |
| Type        | RCM_MsgTypes_Pkg::msgFromTrack_T        |

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| Valid range of values   | n/a          |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | n/a          |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | Misbehaviour |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | Misbehaviour |

<sup>695</sup> **5.10.2.1.11 [dataToRBC\_in]**

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Input name  | dataToRBC_in                                    |
| Description   | Messages to be routed to the supervising RBC    |
| Source  | All components transmitting messages to the RBC |
| Type  | RCM_MsgTypes_Pkg::msgToTrack_T                  |
| Valid range of values   | n/a   |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | n/a   |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | Confused RBC communication                      |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | Confused RBC communication                      |

<sup>696</sup> **5.10.2.1.12 [positionReport\_in]**

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Input name                              | positionReport_in   |
| Description                             | Current positon report to be transmitted to the handing over and/or accepting RBC under control of <i>MoRC_HO</i> |
| Source                                  | providePositionReport   |
| Type                                    | RCM_MsgTypes_Pkg::msgToTrack_T  |
| Valid range of values                   | n/a   |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary     | n/a   |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range | RBC receives faulty position report   |

Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) RBC receives faulty position report

---

697 **5.10.2.1.13 [trainData\_in]**

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Input name  | trainData_in  |
| Description   | Validated train data (packet 11) to be transmitted to the handing over and/or accepting RBC under control of <i>MoRC_HO</i> |
| Source  | ???   |
| Type  | RCM_MsgTypes_Pkg::msgToTrack_T  |
| Valid range of values   | n/a   |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | n/a   |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | RBC receives faulty train data  |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | RBC receives faulty train data  |

---

698 **5.10.2.1.14 [trainPosition]**

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Input name  | trainPosition                                     |
| Description   | Current train position                            |
| Source  | calculateTrainPosition                            |
| Type  | TrainPosition_Types_Pck::trainPosition_T          |
| Valid range of values   | n/a   |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | n/a   |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | RBC handover is performed at an unwanted location |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | RBC handover is performed at an unwanted location |

---

699 **5.10.2.1.15 [BGs]**

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Input name  | BGs   |
| Description   | Collection of currently known balise groups       |
| Source  | calculateTrainPosition                            |
| Type  | TrainPosition_Types_Pck::positionedBGs_T          |
| Valid range of values   | n/a   |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | n/a   |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | RBC handover is performed at an unwanted location |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | RBC handover is performed at an unwanted location |

700 **5.10.2.1.16 [t\_train]**

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Input name  | t_train   |
| Description   | Time, according to trainborne clock, at which messages are to be sent |
| Source  | ???   |
| Type  | T_TRAIN   |
| Valid range of values   | Refer to Subset 016-7.  |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | n/a   |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | Faulty time information in messages sent to the RBC                   |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | Faulty time information in messages sent to the RBC                   |

701 **5.10.2.1.17 [reset]**

|                       |  |
|-----------------------|--|
| Input name            | reset  |
| Description           | Initializes the component and deletes the internal storage |
| Source                | The OBUs system start controller                           |
| Type                  | bool   |
| Valid range of values | true   false   |

---

Behaviour when value is n/a  
at boundary

---

Behaviour for values out of valid range Code generation fails

---

Behaviour when value is Misbehaviour  
erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious)

---

<sup>702</sup> **5.10.2.1.18 [sessionManagementAbility]**

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Input name  | sessionManagementAbility   |
| Description   | Configurable ability to manage one or two sessions and mobile modems onboard |
| Source  | The OBUs configuration manager   |
| Type  | Handover_Pkg::abilityToHandleCommunicationSessions                           |
| Valid range of values   | isAbleToManageOneSession   isAbleToManageTwoSessions                         |
| Behaviour when value is n/a<br>at boundary  |  |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range   | Code generation fails  |
| Behaviour when value is Misbehaviour<br>erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) |  |

---

<sup>703</sup> **5.10.2.1.19 [trainProperties]**

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Input name                                 | trainProperties  |
| Description                                | Train parameters used to calculate the handover location and to generate messages to the RBC |
| Source                                     | The OBUs configuration manager   |
| Type                                       | TrainPosition_Types_Pck::trainProperties_T   |
| Valid range of values                      | n/a  |
| Behaviour when value is n/a<br>at boundary |  |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range    | Faulty parametrization   |

---

---

Behaviour when value is Misbehaviour  
erroneous, absent or un-  
wanted (i.e. spurious)

---

<sup>704</sup> **5.10.2.1.20 [configData]**

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Input name   | configData                                  |
| Description  | Session management configuration parameters |
| Source   | The OBUs configuration manager              |
| Type   | RCM_Session_Types_Pkg::morc_configData_T    |
| Valid range of values  | n/a   |
| Behaviour when value is n/a<br>at boundary   | Misbehaviour                                |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range  | Misbehaviour                                |
| Behaviour when value is Misbehaviour<br>erroneous, absent or un-<br>wanted (i.e. spurious) |   |

---

<sup>705</sup> **5.10.2.2 Outputs**

<sup>706</sup> **5.10.2.2.1 [radioStatus\_1]**

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Output name   | radioStatus_1  |
| Description   | Radio registration, connection and session status for radio link 1 |
| Destination   | All components which need to know the radio status                 |
| Type  | RCM_Session_Types_Pkg::morcStatus_T                                |
| Valid range of values   | n/a  |
| Behaviour when value is n/a<br>at boundary  | Misbehaviour   |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range   | n/a  |
| Behaviour when value is n/a<br>erroneous, absent or un-<br>wanted (i.e. spurious) |  |

---

<sup>707</sup> **5.10.2.2.2 [radioStatus\_2]**

---

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Output name   | radioStatus_2  |
| Description   | Radio registration, connection and session status for radio link 2 |
| Destination   | All components which need to know the radio status                 |
| Type  | RCM_Session_Types_Pkg::morcStatus_T                                |
| Valid range of values   | n/a  |
| Behaviour when value is n/a at boundary                                   |  |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                                   | n/a  |
| Behaviour when value is n/a erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) |  |

---

<sup>708</sup> **5.10.2.2.3 [mobileConnectionCmd\_1]**

---

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Output name   | mobileConnectionCmd_1                             |
| Description   | Commands to mobile 1 for radio connection control |
| Destination   | API to radio mobile 1                             |
| Type  | RCM_Types_Pkg::mobileConnectionCmd_T              |
| Valid range of values   | n/a   |
| Behaviour when value is n/a at boundary                                   |   |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                                   | n/a   |
| Behaviour when value is n/a erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) |   |

---

<sup>709</sup> **5.10.2.2.4 [mobileConnectionCmd\_2]**

---

|                       |   |
|-----------------------|---|
| Output name           | mobileConnectionCmd_2                             |
| Description           | Commands to mobile 2 for radio connection control |
| Destination           | API to radio mobile 2                             |
| Type                  | RCM_Types_Pkg::mobileConnectionCmd_T              |
| Valid range of values | n/a   |

---

---

Behaviour when value is n/a  
at boundary

---

Behaviour for values out n/a  
of valid range

---

Behaviour when value is n/a  
erroneous, absent or un-  
wanted (i.e. spurious)

---

<sup>710</sup> **5.10.2.2.5 [mobileRegistrationCmd\_1]**

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Output name   | mobileRegistrationCmd_1                             |
| Description   | Commands to mobile 1 for radio registration control |
| Destination   | API to radio mobile 1                               |
| Type  | RCM_Types_Pkg::mobileRegistrationCmd_T              |
| Valid range of values   | n/a   |
| Behaviour when value is n/a<br>at boundary  |   |
| Behaviour for values out n/a<br>of valid range                                    |   |
| Behaviour when value is n/a<br>erroneous, absent or un-<br>wanted (i.e. spurious) |   |

---

<sup>711</sup> **5.10.2.2.6 [mobileRegistrationCmd\_2]**

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Output name                                    | mobileRegistrationCmd_2                             |
| Description                                    | Commands to mobile 2 for radio registration control |
| Destination                                    | API to radio mobile 2                               |
| Type   | RCM_Types_Pkg::mobileRegistrationCmd_T              |
| Valid range of values                          | n/a   |
| Behaviour when value is n/a<br>at boundary     |   |
| Behaviour for values out n/a<br>of valid range |   |

---

Behaviour when value is n/a  
erroneous, absent or un-  
wanted (i.e. spurious)

---

<sup>712</sup> **5.10.2.2.7 [safeRadioIndication]**

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Output name   | safeRadioIndication   |
| Description   | Safe radio indication for DMI   |
| Destination   | DIM via DMI interface   |
| Type  | RCM_Session_Types_Pkg::safeRadioConnectionIndication_T                  |
| Valid range of values   | srci_noConnection   srci_connectionLost_setupFailed   srci_connectionUp |
| Behaviour when value is n/a<br>at boundary  |   |
| Behaviour for values out n/a<br>of valid range                                    |   |
| Behaviour when value is n/a<br>erroneous, absent or un-<br>wanted (i.e. spurious) |   |

---

<sup>713</sup> **5.10.2.2.8 [supervisingRBC]**

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Output name   | supervisingRBC  |
| Description   | Designates the current supervising RBC for the InformationFilter to support input message filtering and buffering there |
| Destination   | InformationFilter   |
| Type  | Handover_Pkg::connection_ids_T  |
| Valid range of values   | n/a   |
| Behaviour when value is n/a<br>at boundary  |   |
| Behaviour for values out n/a<br>of valid range                                    |   |
| Behaviour when value is n/a<br>erroneous, absent or un-<br>wanted (i.e. spurious) |   |

---

<sup>714</sup> **5.10.2.2.9 [bufferInformationFromAcceptingRBC]**

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Output name   | bufferInformationFromAcceptingRBC   |
| Description   | Informs the InfomationFilter to buffer messages received from the accepting RBC |
| Destination   | InformationFilter   |
| Type  | bool  |
| Valid range of values   | true   false  |
| Behaviour when value is n/a at boundary                               |   |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | Code generation fails   |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | Misbehaviour  |

<sup>715</sup> **5.10.2.2.10 [trainPassesA\_RBC\_RBC\_border\_WithItsFrontEnd]**

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Output name   | trainPassesA_RBC_RBC_border_WithItsFrontEnd            |
| Description   | Indicates that the train front passes a RBC/RBC border |
| Destination   | To whom it may concern                                 |
| Type  | bool   |
| Valid range of values   | true   false   |
| Behaviour when value is n/a at boundary                               |  |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | Code generation fails                                  |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | Misbehaviour   |

<sup>716</sup> **5.10.2.2.11 [msgToRBC\_1]**

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Output name | msgToRBC_1  |
| Description | Radio message to be transmitted to RBC via mobile modem 1, if session established |
| Destination | API: interface to mobile modem 1  |
| Type        | RCM_MsgTypes_Pkg::msgToTrack_T  |

---

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Valid range of values   | n/a |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | n/a |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | n/a |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | n/a |

---

<sup>717</sup> **5.10.2.2.12 [msgToRBC\_2]**

---

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Output name   | msgToRBC_2  |
| Description   | Radio message to be transmitted to RBC via mobile modem 2, if session established |
| Destination   | API: interface to mobile modem 2  |
| Type  | RCM_MsgTypes_Pkg::msgToTrack_T  |
| Valid range of values   | n/a   |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | n/a   |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | n/a   |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | n/a   |

---

<sup>718</sup> **5.10.2.2.13 [triggerPositionReport]**

---

|                                     |   |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| Output name                         | triggerPositionReport   |
| Description                         | Triggers the providePositionReport function to provide a position report at positionReport_in input |
| Destination                         | providePositionReport   |
| Type                                | bool  |
| Valid range of values               | true   false  |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary | n/a   |

---

---

Behaviour for values out of valid range    Code generation fails

---

Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious)    Causes a mistimed position report

---

<sup>719</sup> **5.10.2.2.14 [triggerTrainData]**

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Output name   | triggerTrainData   |
| Description   | Triggers the provideTrainData function to provide a train data set (packet 11) at trainData_in input |
| Destination   | provideTrainData ???   |
| Type  | bool   |
| Valid range of values   | true   false   |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | n/a  |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | Code generation fails  |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | Causes a mistimed train data set transmission to the RBC   |

---

<sup>720</sup> **5.10.2.2.15 [rejectOrderToContactRBC\_or\_RIU]**

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Output name   | rejectOrderToContactRBC_or_RIU                                      |
| Description   | Informs the OBU that the order to contact an RBC has to be rejected |
| Destination   | ???   |
| Type  | bool  |
| Valid range of values   | true   false  |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | n/a   |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | Code generation fails   |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | n/a   |

---

<sup>721</sup> **5.10.2.2.16 [infomDriverNoCompatibleVersionSupported]**

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Output name   | infomDriverNoCompatibleVersionSupported                    |
| Description   | Informs the driver that no compatible version is supported |
| Destination   | DMI via DMI interface and API                              |
| Type  | bool   |
| Valid range of values   | true   false   |
| Behaviour when value is n/a at boundary                               |  |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | Code generation fails                                      |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | Misinformed train driver                                   |

<sup>722</sup> **5.10.2.2.17 [memorizeTheLastRadioNetworkID]**

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Output name   | memorizeTheLastRadioNetworkID                     |
| Description   | Triggers the storage of the last radio network ID |
| Destination   | External storage via API                          |
| Type  | bool  |
| Valid range of values   | true   false                                      |
| Behaviour when value is n/a at boundary                               |   |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | Code generation fails                             |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | Corrupted stored last radio network ID            |

<sup>723</sup> **5.10.2.2.18 [lastReceivedRadioNetworkID]**

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Output name | lastReceivedRadioNetworkID                       |
| Description | Provides the last received radio network ID      |
| Destination | External storage via API                         |
| Type        | Packet_Types_Pkg::P45_RadioNetworkRegistration_T |

---

|                       |                                  |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------|
| Valid range of values | Refer to subset 026-7, packet 45 |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------|

---

|                                     |     |
|-------------------------------------|-----|
| Behaviour when value is at boundary | n/a |
|-------------------------------------|-----|

---

|   |                       |
|---|-----------------------|
| Behaviour for values out of valid range | Code generation fails |
|---|-----------------------|

---

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | Corrupted stored last radio network ID |
|---|--|

---

<sup>724</sup> **5.10.2.2.19 [ready]**

---

|             |       |
|-------------|-------|
| Output name | ready |
|-------------|-------|

---

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Description | When false, indicates that MoRC_HO has not finished the current operation and needs at least one more clock before the next input event can be consumed |
|-------------|---|

---

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Destination | All components providing inputs for MoRC_HO |
|-------------|---|

---

|      |      |
|------|------|
| Type | bool |
|------|------|

---

|                       |              |
|-----------------------|--------------|
| Valid range of values | true   false |
|-----------------------|--------------|

---

|                                     |     |
|-------------------------------------|-----|
| Behaviour when value is at boundary | n/a |
|-------------------------------------|-----|

---

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Behaviour for values out of valid range | n/a |
|---|-----|

---

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | Misbehaviour |
|---|--------------|

---

<sup>725</sup> **5.10.3 Subcomponents**

<sup>726</sup> **5.10.3.1 RBC\_Handover**

<sup>727</sup> **5.10.3.1.1 Component Requirements**

---

|                |                    |
|----------------|--------------------|
| Component name | processHandingOver |
|----------------|--------------------|

---

|                     |   |
|---------------------|---|
| Link to SCADE model | <a href="https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/Radio/Handover/RBC_Handover">https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/Radio/Handover/RBC_Handover</a> |
|---------------------|---|

---

|                |                      |
|----------------|----------------------|
| SCADE designer | Uwe Steinke, Siemens |
|----------------|----------------------|

---

Description  
The function *processHandingOver* implements the process of handing over the OBU from one RBC to a subsequent RBC. This process is based upon orders received from balise and radio.

*processHandingOver* terminates the radio session with the current - the handing over - RBC and establishes a session with the new - the accepting - RBC. Dependent on the availability of one or two mobile modems onboard, *processHandingOver* is able to manage two sessions in parallel or subsequently. For this, it steers two instances of MoRC\_Main\_v2.

*processHandingOver* controls the switchover of the OBUs output data stream to track from the handing over RBC to the accepting RBC and provides the InformationFilter with the supervising RBC information for message buffering and filtering.

It in addition, *processHandingOver* monitors the current train position and executes the handover, when the train front passes the appropriate location.

---

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter 3.15<br>Subset-026, Chapter 5.15                    |
| Safety integrity level | 4   |
| Time constraints       | Implements several time delays, therefore appropriate clocking required |
| API requirements       | n/a   |

---

728 **5.10.3.1.2 Interface**

729 For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link  
730 above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.

731 **5.10.3.2 Management\_of\_Radio\_Communication**

732 **5.10.3.2.1 Component Requirements**

---

|                     |   |
|---------------------|---|
| Component name      | MoRC_Main_v2 (Management_of_Radio_Communication)  |
| Link to SCADE model | <a href="https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/Radio/MoRC">https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/Radio/MoRC</a> |
| SCADE designer      | Uwe Steinke, Siemens  |

---

Description  
The function *MoRC\_Main\_v2* implements the session states establishing, maintaining and terminating as described in Subset-026, chap. 3.5. A SCADE state machine reflects this state model accurately. Within each of the states, the activities needed as long as the state is active, are performed.

*MoRC\_Main\_v2* is related to exactly one of the radio mobile modems onboard, monitors its status and controls the processes of registration to the radio network, connecting to one RBC and establishing a radio session with the RBC. *MoRC\_Main\_v2* communicates with its mobile modem directly via the API.

As the OBU is required to manage up to two RBCs, two instances of *MoRC\_Main\_v2* are used.

In addition, *MoRC\_Main\_v2* generates the radio connection indication for the driver.

---

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter 3.5   |
| Safety integrity level | 4   |
| Time constraints       | Implements several time delays, therefore appropriate clocking required |
| API requirements       | Interfaces to the OBUs mobile modem hardware via API                    |

---

733 **5.10.3.2.2 Interface**

734 For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link  
735 above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.

736 **5.10.3.3 mobileDataRouter**

737 **5.10.3.3.1 Component Requirements**

---

|                     |   |
|---------------------|---|
| Component name      | mobileDataRouter_out  |
| Link to SCADE model | <a href="https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/Radio/Handover/RBC_Handover">https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/ObuFunctions/Radio/Handover/RBC_Handover</a> |
| SCADE designer      | Uwe Steinke, Siemens  |
| Description         | The function <i>mobileDataRouter_out</i> represents the change-over switch commuting the OBUs output message data stream from the handing over RBC to the accepting RBC. It is controlled by the processHandingOver subcomponent.       |
| Input documents     | Subset-026, Chapter 3.15<br>Subset-026, Chapter 5.15  |

---

|                        |     |
|------------------------|-----|
| Safety integrity level | 4   |
| Time constraints       | n/a |
| API requirements       | n/a |

738 **5.10.3.3.2 Interface**

739 For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link  
 740 above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.

**5.11 F2.10: ManageDMIInput**

742 section and corresponding subsections have to be completed

743 **5.11.1 Component Requirements**

|                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| Component name         | ManageDMIInput   |
| Link to SCADE model    | <a href="http://??">http://??</a>  |
| SCADE designer         | Bernd Hekele, DB Netz AG   |
| Description            | [Brief description of the components functionality]                          |
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter ??<br>Subset-026, Chapter ??<br>Subset-026, Chapter ???? |
| Safety integrity level | 4  |
| Time constraints       | [If applicable description of time constraints, otherwise n/a]               |
| API requirements       | [If applicable description of API requirements, otherwise n/a]               |

744 **5.11.2 Interface**

745 An overview of the interface of component ManageDMIInput is shown in Figure 30. The inputs  
 746 and outputs are described in detail in Section 5.11.2.1 respectively 5.11.2.2. Subcomponents are  
 747 described in Section 5.11.3.

748 **5.11.2.1 Inputs**

749 **5.11.2.1.1 [Input 1 name]**

|             |                                  |
|-------------|----------------------------------|
| Input name  | [Name of the input]              |
| Description | [Brief description of the input] |
| Source      | [Name of the source component]   |
| Type        | [Type of the input]              |

---

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Valid range of values   | [Complete list of valid values]   |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | [Description of components behaviour when input value is at boundary]                             |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | [Description of components behaviour when input value is out of valid range]                      |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | [Description of components behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious)] |

---

750 **5.11.2.1.2 [Input 2 name]**

---

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Input name  | [Name of the input]   |
| Description   | [Brief description of the input]  |
| Source  | [Name of the source component]  |
| Type  | [Type of the input]   |
| Valid range of values   | [Complete list of valid values]   |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | [Description of components behaviour when input value is at boundary]                             |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | [Description of components behaviour when input value is out of valid range]                      |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | [Description of components behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious)] |

---

751 **5.11.2.2 Outputs**

752 **5.11.2.2.1 [Output 1 name]**

---

|                                     |  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| Output name                         | [Name of the output]   |
| Description                         | [Brief description of the output]                                      |
| Destination                         | [Name of the destination component(s)]                                 |
| Type                                | [Type of the output]   |
| Valid range of values               | [Complete list of valid values]  |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary | [Description of components behaviour when output value is at boundary] |

---

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | [Description of components behaviour when output value is out of valid range]                     |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | [Description of components behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious)] |

753 **5.11.2.2.2 [Output 2 name]**

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Output name   | [Name of the output]  |
| Description   | [Brief description of the output]   |
| Destination   | [Name of the destination component(s)]  |
| Type  | [Type of the output]  |
| Valid range of values   | [Complete list of valid values]   |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | [Description of components behaviour when output value is at boundary]                            |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | [Description of components behaviour when output value is out of valid range]                     |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | [Description of components behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious)] |

754 **5.11.3 Subcomponents**

755 Currently ManageDMIInput does not have any subcomponents.

**5.12<sub>6</sub> F2.11: ManageDMIOutput**

757 section and corresponding subsections have to be completed

758 **5.12.1 Component Requirements**

|                     |   |
|---------------------|---|
| Component name      | ManageDMIOutput   |
| Link to SCADE model | <a href="http://??">http://??</a>   |
| SCADE designer      | Bernd Hekele, DB Netz AG  |
| Description         | [Brief description of the components functionality]                         |
| Input documents     | Subset-026, Chapter ??<br>Subset-026, Chapter ??<br>Subset-026, Chapter ??? |

Safety integrity level 4

---

|                  |  |
|------------------|--|
| Time constraints | [If applicable description of time constraints, otherwise n/a] |
| API requirements | [If applicable description of API requirements, otherwise n/a] |

---

759 **5.12.2 Interface**

760 An overview of the interface of component ManageDMIOOutput is shown in Figure 31. The inputs  
 761 and outputs are described in detail in Section 5.12.2.1 respectively 5.12.2.2. Subcomponents are  
 762 described in Section 5.12.3.

763 **5.12.2.1 Inputs**

764 **5.12.2.1.1 [Input 1 name]**

---

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Input name  | [Name of the input]   |
| Description   | [Brief description of the input]  |
| Source  | [Name of the source component]  |
| Type  | [Type of the input]   |
| Valid range of values   | [Complete list of valid values]   |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | [Description of components behaviour when input value is at boundary]                             |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | [Description of components behaviour when input value is out of valid range]                      |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | [Description of components behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious)] |

---

765 **5.12.2.1.2 [Input 2 name]**

---

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Input name                              | [Name of the input]  |
| Description                             | [Brief description of the input]   |
| Source                                  | [Name of the source component]   |
| Type                                    | [Type of the input]  |
| Valid range of values                   | [Complete list of valid values]  |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary     | [Description of components behaviour when input value is at boundary]        |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range | [Description of components behaviour when input value is out of valid range] |

---

---

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | [Description of components behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious)] |
|---|---|

---

<sup>766</sup> **5.12.2.2 Outputs**

<sup>767</sup> **5.12.2.2.1 [Output 1 name]**

---

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Output name   | [Name of the output]  |
| Description   | [Brief description of the output]   |
| Destination   | [Name of the destination component(s)]  |
| Type  | [Type of the output]  |
| Valid range of values   | [Complete list of valid values]   |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | [Description of components behaviour when output value is at boundary]                            |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | [Description of components behaviour when output value is out of valid range]                     |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | [Description of components behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious)] |

---

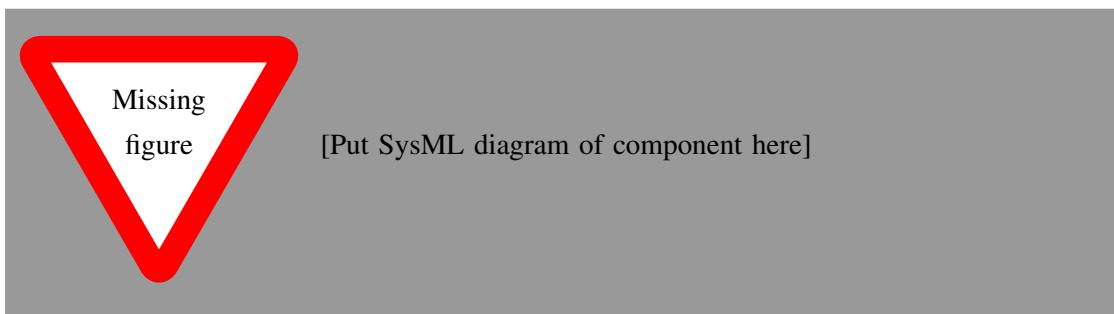
<sup>768</sup> **5.12.2.2.2 [Output 2 name]**

---

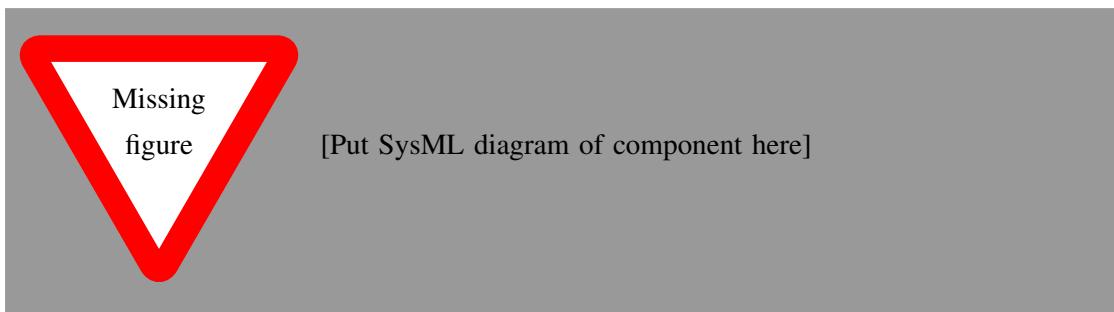
|   |   |
|---|---|
| Output name   | [Name of the output]  |
| Description   | [Brief description of the output]   |
| Destination   | [Name of the destination component(s)]  |
| Type  | [Type of the output]  |
| Valid range of values   | [Complete list of valid values]   |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | [Description of components behaviour when output value is at boundary]                            |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | [Description of components behaviour when output value is out of valid range]                     |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | [Description of components behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious)] |

---

<sup>769</sup> **5.12.3 Subcomponents**



**Figure 30. ManageDMIInput SysML diagram**



**Figure 31. ManageDMIOOutput SysML diagram**

<sup>770</sup> **5.12.3.1 cyclicReportToDMI**

<sup>771</sup> **5.12.3.1.1 Component Requirements**

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| Component name         | cyclicReportToDMI   |
| Link to SCADE model    | <a href="http://??">http://???</a>  |
| SCADE designer         | Bernd Hekele, DB Netz AG  |
| Description            | [Brief description of functionality]  |
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter ??<br>Subset-026, Chapter ??<br>Subset-026, Chapter ??? |
| Safety integrity level | 4   |
| Time constraints       | [If applicable description of time constraints, otherwise n/a]              |
| API requirements       | [If applicable description of API requirements, otherwise n/a]              |

<sup>772</sup> **5.12.3.1.2 Interface**

<sup>773</sup> For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.

<sup>775</sup> **5.12.3.2 ManageTextMessages**

<sup>776</sup> **5.12.3.2.1 Component Requirements**

*This work is licensed under the "openETCS Open License Terms" (oOLT).*

Component name      ManageTextMessages

Link to SCADE model      [http://???](http://??)

780 **5.12.3.3 copyTrackDescription**

781 **5.12.3.3.1 Component Requirements**

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| Component name         | copyTrackDescription  |
| Link to SCADE model    | <a href="http://??">http://???</a>  |
| SCADE designer         | Bernd Hekele, DB Netz AG  |
| Description            | [Brief description of functionality]  |
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter ??<br>Subset-026, Chapter ??<br>Subset-026, Chapter ??..? |
| Safety integrity level | 4   |
| Time constraints       | [If applicable description of time constraints, otherwise n/a]                |
| API requirements       | [If applicable description of API requirements, otherwise n/a]                |

782 **5.12.3.3.2 Interface**

783 For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link  
 784 above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.

785 **5.12.3.4 toEntryRequest**

786 **5.12.3.4.1 Component Requirements**

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| Component name         | toEntryRequest  |
| Link to SCADE model    | <a href="http://??">http://???</a>  |
| SCADE designer         | Bernd Hekele, DB Netz AG  |
| Description            | [Brief description of functionality]  |
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter ??<br>Subset-026, Chapter ??<br>Subset-026, Chapter ??..? |
| Safety integrity level | 4   |
| Time constraints       | [If applicable description of time constraints, otherwise n/a]                |
| API requirements       | [If applicable description of API requirements, otherwise n/a]                |

787 **5.12.3.4.2 Interface**

788 For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link  
 789 above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.

790 **5.12.3.5 sendBrakesToDMI**

791 **5.12.3.5.1 Component Requirements**

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| Component name         | sendBrakesToDMI   |
| Link to SCADE model    | <a href="http://??">http://???</a>  |
| SCADE designer         | Bernd Hekele, DB Netz AG  |
| Description            | [Brief description of functionality]  |
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter ??<br>Subset-026, Chapter ??<br>Subset-026, Chapter ??..? |
| Safety integrity level | 4   |
| Time constraints       | [If applicable description of time constraints, otherwise n/a]                |
| API requirements       | [If applicable description of API requirements, otherwise n/a]                |

792 **5.12.3.5.2 Interface**

793 For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link  
 794 above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.

795 **5.12.3.6 manageDMI\_Output**

796 **5.12.3.6.1 Component Requirements**

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| Component name         | manageDMI_Output  |
| Link to SCADE model    | <a href="http://??">http://???</a>  |
| SCADE designer         | Bernd Hekele, DB Netz AG  |
| Description            | [Brief description of functionality]  |
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter ??<br>Subset-026, Chapter ??<br>Subset-026, Chapter ??..? |
| Safety integrity level | 4   |
| Time constraints       | [If applicable description of time constraints, otherwise n/a]                |
| API requirements       | [If applicable description of API requirements, otherwise n/a]                |

797 **5.12.3.6.2 Interface**

798 For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link  
 799 above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.

800 **5.12.3.7 sendTrainData**801 **5.12.3.7.1 Component Requirements**

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| Component name         | sendTrainData   |
| Link to SCADE model    | <a href="http://??">http://???</a>  |
| SCADE designer         | Bernd Hekele, DB Netz AG  |
| Description            | [Brief description of functionality]  |
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter ??<br>Subset-026, Chapter ??<br>Subset-026, Chapter ??..? |
| Safety integrity level | 4   |
| Time constraints       | [If applicable description of time constraints, otherwise n/a]                |
| API requirements       | [If applicable description of API requirements, otherwise n/a]                |

802 **5.12.3.7.2 Interface**

803 For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link  
 804 above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.

805 **5.12.3.8 sendVersion**806 **5.12.3.8.1 Component Requirements**

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| Component name         | sendVersion   |
| Link to SCADE model    | <a href="http://??">http://???</a>  |
| SCADE designer         | Bernd Hekele, DB Netz AG  |
| Description            | [Brief description of functionality]  |
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter ??<br>Subset-026, Chapter ??<br>Subset-026, Chapter ??..? |
| Safety integrity level | 4   |
| Time constraints       | [If applicable description of time constraints, otherwise n/a]                |
| API requirements       | [If applicable description of API requirements, otherwise n/a]                |

807 **5.12.3.8.2 Interface**

808 For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link  
 809 above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.

810 **5.12.3.9 sendLevelListPkg**

811 **5.12.3.9.1 Component Requirements**

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| Component name         | sendLevelListPkg  |
| Link to SCADE model    | <a href="http://??">http://???</a>  |
| SCADE designer         | Bernd Hekele, DB Netz AG  |
| Description            | [Brief description of functionality]  |
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter ??<br>Subset-026, Chapter ??<br>Subset-026, Chapter ??..? |
| Safety integrity level | 4   |
| Time constraints       | [If applicable description of time constraints, otherwise n/a]                |
| API requirements       | [If applicable description of API requirements, otherwise n/a]                |

812 **5.12.3.9.2 Interface**

813 For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.

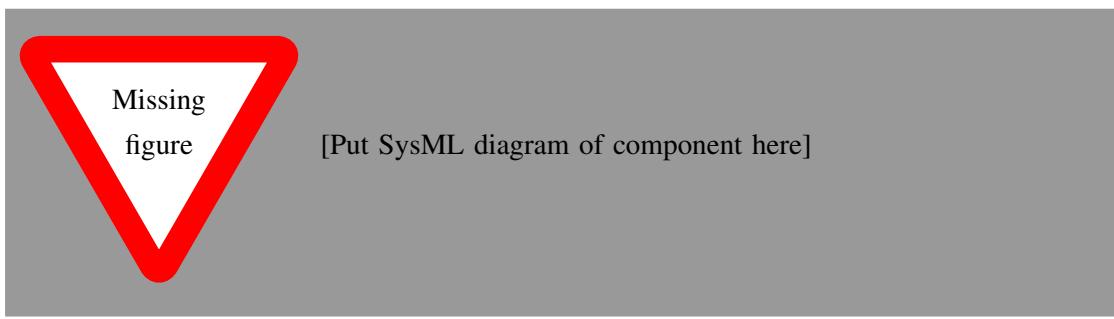
5.13 F2.12: ManageTIUInput

816 section and corresponding subsections have to be completed

817 **5.13.1 Component Requirements**

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| Component name         | ManageTIUInput  |
| Link to SCADE model    | <a href="http://??">http://???</a>  |
| SCADE designer         | Bernd Hekele, DB Netz AG  |
| Description            | [Brief description of the components functionality]                           |
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter ??<br>Subset-026, Chapter ??<br>Subset-026, Chapter ??..? |
| Safety integrity level | 4   |
| Time constraints       | [If applicable description of time constraints, otherwise n/a]                |
| API requirements       | [If applicable description of API requirements, otherwise n/a]                |

818 **5.13.2 Interface**



**Figure 32. ManageTIUInput SysML diagram**

819 An overview of the interface of component ManageTIUInput is shown in Figure 32. The inputs  
 820 and outputs are described in detail in Section 5.13.2.1 respectively 5.13.2.2. Subcomponents are  
 821 described in Section 5.13.3.

### 822 **5.13.2.1 Inputs**

#### 823 **5.13.2.1.1 [Input 1 name]**

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Input name  | [Name of the input]   |
| Description   | [Brief description of the input]  |
| Source  | [Name of the source component]  |
| Type  | [Type of the input]   |
| Valid range of values   | [Complete list of valid values]   |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | [Description of components behaviour when input value is at boundary]                             |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | [Description of components behaviour when input value is out of valid range]                      |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | [Description of components behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious)] |

#### 824 **5.13.2.1.2 [Input 2 name]**

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Input name  | [Name of the input]   |
| Description   | [Brief description of the input]  |
| Source  | [Name of the source component]  |
| Type  | [Type of the input]   |
| Valid range of values   | [Complete list of valid values]   |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | [Description of components behaviour when input value is at boundary]                             |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | [Description of components behaviour when input value is out of valid range]                      |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | [Description of components behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious)] |

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Output name   | [Name of the output]  |
| Description   | [Brief description of the output]   |
| Destination   | [Name of the destination component(s)]  |
| Type  | [Type of the output]  |
| Valid range of values   | [Complete list of valid values]   |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | [Description of components behaviour when output value is at boundary]                            |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | [Description of components behaviour when output value is out of valid range]                     |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | [Description of components behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious)] |

827 **5.13.2.2 [Output 2 name]**

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Output name   | [Name of the output]  |
| Description   | [Brief description of the output]   |
| Destination   | [Name of the destination component(s)]  |
| Type  | [Type of the output]  |
| Valid range of values   | [Complete list of valid values]   |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | [Description of components behaviour when output value is at boundary]                            |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | [Description of components behaviour when output value is out of valid range]                     |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | [Description of components behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious)] |

828 **5.13.3 Subcomponents**

829 **5.13.3.1 mergeTIU\_Info**

830 **5.13.3.1.1 Component Requirements**

|                     |                                   |
|---------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Component name      | mergeTIU_Info                     |
| Link to SCADE model | <a href="http://??">http://??</a> |

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| SCADE designer         | Bernd Hekele, DB Netz AG  |
| Description            | [Brief description of functionality]  |
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter ??<br>Subset-026, Chapter ??<br>Subset-026, Chapter ??? |
| Safety integrity level | 4   |
| Time constraints       | [If applicable description of time constraints, otherwise n/a]              |
| API requirements       | [If applicable description of API requirements, otherwise n/a]              |

831 **5.13.3.1.2 Interface**

832 For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link  
 833 above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.

834 **5.13.3.2 getTIUStatusFromData**

835 **5.13.3.2.1 Component Requirements**

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| Component name         | getTIUStatusFromData  |
| Link to SCADE model    | <a href="http://????">http://????</a>                                       |
| SCADE designer         | Bernd Hekele, DB Netz AG  |
| Description            | [Brief description of functionality]  |
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter ??<br>Subset-026, Chapter ??<br>Subset-026, Chapter ??? |
| Safety integrity level | 4   |
| Time constraints       | [If applicable description of time constraints, otherwise n/a]              |
| API requirements       | [If applicable description of API requirements, otherwise n/a]              |

836 **5.13.3.2.2 Interface**

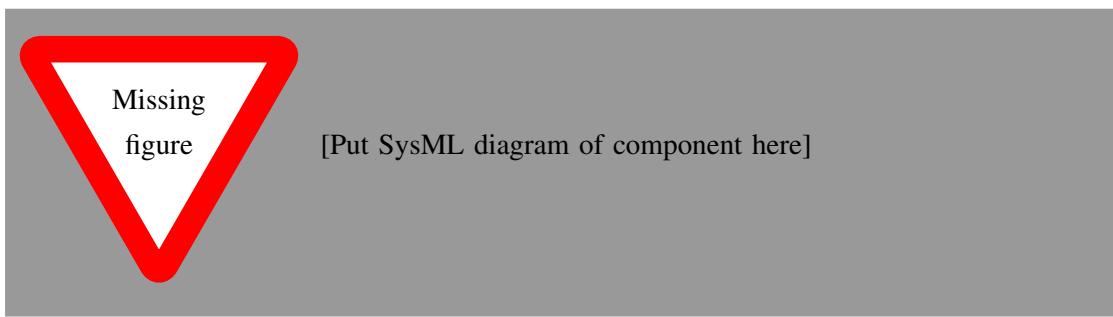
837 For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link  
 838 above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.

**5.14 F2.13: ManageTIUOutput**

840

section and corresponding subsections have to be completed

841 **5.14.1 Component Requirements**



**Figure 33. ManageTIUOutput SysML diagram**

|                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| Component name         | ManageTIUOutput  |
| Link to SCADE model    | <a href="http://??">http://???</a>   |
| SCADE designer         | Bernd Hekele, DB Netz AG   |
| Description            | [Brief description of the components functionality]                          |
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter ??<br>Subset-026, Chapter ??<br>Subset-026, Chapter ???? |
| Safety integrity level | 4  |
| Time constraints       | [If applicable description of time constraints, otherwise n/a]               |
| API requirements       | [If applicable description of API requirements, otherwise n/a]               |

## 842 **5.14.2 Interface**

843 An overview of the interface of component ManageTIUOutput is shown in Figure 33. The inputs  
 844 and outputs are described in detail in Section 5.14.2.1 respectively 5.14.2.2. Subcomponents are  
 845 described in Section 5.14.3.

### 846 **5.14.2.1 Inputs**

#### 847 **5.14.2.1.1 [Input 1 name]**

|                                     |   |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| Input name                          | [Name of the input]   |
| Description                         | [Brief description of the input]                                      |
| Source                              | [Name of the source component]  |
| Type                                | [Type of the input]   |
| Valid range of values               | [Complete list of valid values]                                       |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary | [Description of components behaviour when input value is at boundary] |

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | [Description of components behaviour when input value is out of valid range]                      |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | [Description of components behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious)] |

848 **5.14.2.1.2 [Input 2 name]**

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Input name  | [Name of the input]   |
| Description   | [Brief description of the input]  |
| Source  | [Name of the source component]  |
| Type  | [Type of the input]   |
| Valid range of values   | [Complete list of valid values]   |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | [Description of components behaviour when input value is at boundary]                             |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | [Description of components behaviour when input value is out of valid range]                      |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | [Description of components behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious)] |

849 **5.14.2.2 Outputs**

850 **5.14.2.2.1 [Output 1 name]**

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Output name   | [Name of the output]  |
| Description   | [Brief description of the output]   |
| Destination   | [Name of the destination component(s)]  |
| Type  | [Type of the output]  |
| Valid range of values   | [Complete list of valid values]   |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | [Description of components behaviour when output value is at boundary]                            |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | [Description of components behaviour when output value is out of valid range]                     |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | [Description of components behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious)] |

851 **5.14.2.2.2 [Output 2 name]**

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Output name   | [Name of the output]  |
| Description   | [Brief description of the output]   |
| Destination   | [Name of the destination component(s)]  |
| Type  | [Type of the output]  |
| Valid range of values   | [Complete list of valid values]   |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | [Description of components behaviour when output value is at boundary]                            |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | [Description of components behaviour when output value is out of valid range]                     |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | [Description of components behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious)] |

852 **5.14.3 Subcomponents**

853 **5.14.3.1 handleTraction**

854 **5.14.3.1.1 Component Requirements**

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| Component name         | handleTraction  |
| Link to SCADE model    | <a href="http://??">http://??</a>   |
| SCADE designer         | Bernd Hekele, DB Netz AG  |
| Description            | [Brief description of functionality]  |
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter ??<br>Subset-026, Chapter ??<br>Subset-026, Chapter ??? |
| Safety integrity level | 4   |
| Time constraints       | [If applicable description of time constraints, otherwise n/a]              |
| API requirements       | [If applicable description of API requirements, otherwise n/a]              |

855 **5.14.3.1.2 Interface**

856 For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link  
 857 above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.

858 **5.14.3.2 manageTIU\_output**

859 **5.14.3.2.1 Component Requirements**

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| Component name         | manageTIU_output  |
| Link to SCADE model    | <a href="http://??">http://???</a>  |
| SCADE designer         | Bernd Hekele, DB Netz AG  |
| Description            | [Brief description of functionality]  |
| Input documents        | Subset-026, Chapter ??<br>Subset-026, Chapter ??<br>Subset-026, Chapter ??? |
| Safety integrity level | 4   |
| Time constraints       | [If applicable description of time constraints, otherwise n/a]              |
| API requirements       | [If applicable description of API requirements, otherwise n/a]              |

860 **5.14.3.2.2 Interface**

861 For an overview of the interface of this internal component we refer to the SCADE model (cf. link  
 862 above) respectively the SCADE generated documentation.

## 6<sup>863</sup> F3: Measure Train Movement

<sup>864</sup> This component is not part of the openETCS OBU currently and therefore no detailed description  
<sup>865</sup> is provided here.

## 7<sup>866</sup> F4: Manage Radio Communication

<sup>867</sup> This component is not part of the openETCS OBU currently and therefore no detailed description  
<sup>868</sup> is provided here.

## 8<sup>869</sup> F5: Manage JRU

<sup>870</sup> This component is not part of the openETCS OBU currently and therefore no detailed description  
<sup>871</sup> is provided here.

## 9<sub>872</sub> F6: DMI Controller

<sub>873</sub> This chapter needs to be completed and a responsible developer has to be identified.

### 9.1<sub>874</sub> DMI

#### 9.1.1 Component Requirements

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| Component name         | DMI   |
| Link to SCADE model    | <a href="https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/DMI_Control">https://github.com/openETCS/modeling/tree/master/model/Scade/System/DMI_Control</a>   |
| SCADE designer         | Valerio D'Angelo, DB Netz AG  |
| Description            | The DMI controller interacts with the DMI display and is responsible for alls procedures between the DMI display and Driver. Furthermore, the DMI controller will interact with the DMI Management to compute the received information (e.g. driver number request, ...) and send, if necessary, data or reports to the DMI Management (acknowledge, text messages...). The DMI Controller is a passive module, this means that all the processing are performed EVC-side, therefore the DMI Controller simply responds to the requests of the EVC or Driver and performs some checks according with the information received from EVC. |
| Input documents        | ERA_ERTMS_015560  |
| Safety integrity level | 4   |
| Time constraints       | [If applicable description of time constraints, otherwise n/a]  |
| API requirements       | [If applicable description of API requirements, otherwise n/a]  |

#### 9.1.2 Interface

<sub>877</sub> An overview of the interface of component DMI is shown in Figure 34. The inputs and outputs  
<sub>878</sub> are described in detail in Section 9.1.2.1 respectively 9.1.2.2.

##### 9.1.2.1 Inputs

###### 9.1.2.1.1 DMI\_entry\_request

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Input name  | DMI_entry_request   |
| Description | Request to input data (e.g. driver id, Train running number etc.) |
| Source      | DMI Management  |

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Type  | [Type of the input]   |
| Valid range of values   | [Complete list of valid values]   |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | [Description of components behaviour when input value is at boundary]                             |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | [Description of components behaviour when input value is out of valid range]                      |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | [Description of components behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious)] |

<sup>881</sup> **9.1.2.1.2 DMI\_identifier\_request**

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Input name  | DMI_identifier_request  |
| Description   | Request of the DMI informations   |
| Source  | DMI Management  |
| Type  | [Type of the input]   |
| Valid range of values   | [Complete list of valid values]   |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | [Description of components behaviour when input value is at boundary]                             |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | [Description of components behaviour when input value is out of valid range]                      |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | [Description of components behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious)] |

<sup>882</sup> **9.1.2.1.3 DMI\_menu\_request**

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Input name                              | DMI_menu_request   |
| Description                             | Request to enable or disable buttons   |
| Source                                  | DMI Management   |
| Type                                    | [Type of the input]  |
| Valid range of values                   | [Complete list of valid values]  |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary     | [Description of components behaviour when input value is at boundary]        |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range | [Description of components behaviour when input value is out of valid range] |

---

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | [Description of components behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious)] |
|---|---|

---

883 **9.1.2.1.4 DMI\_dynamic**

---

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Input name  | DMI_dynamic   |
| Description   | Contains informations about current speed, current mode etc.                                      |
| Source  | DMI Management  |
| Type  | [Type of the input]   |
| Valid range of values   | [Complete list of valid values]   |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | [Description of components behaviour when input value is at boundary]                             |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | [Description of components behaviour when input value is out of valid range]                      |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | [Description of components behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious)] |

---

884 **9.1.2.1.5 DMI\_text\_message**

---

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Input name  | DMI_text_message  |
| Description   | Contains predefined or plain text messages  |
| Source  | DMI Management  |
| Type  | [Type of the input]   |
| Valid range of values   | [Complete list of valid values]   |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | [Description of components behaviour when input value is at boundary]                             |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | [Description of components behaviour when input value is out of valid range]                      |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | [Description of components behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious)] |

---

885 **9.1.2.1.6 DMI\_icons**

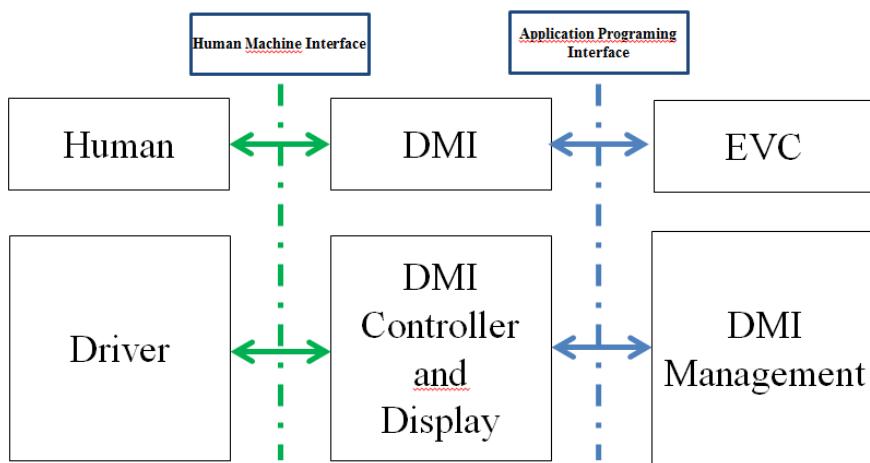


Figure 34. DMI component SysML diagram

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Input name  | DMI_icons   |
| Description   | Request to display one or more icons in any area  |
| Source  | DMI Management  |
| Type  | [Type of the input]   |
| Valid range of values   | [Complete list of valid values]   |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | [Description of components behaviour when input value is at boundary]                             |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | [Description of components behaviour when input value is out of valid range]                      |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | [Description of components behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious)] |

#### 886 9.1.2.1.7 DMI\_driver\_identifier

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Input name  | DMI_driver_identifier   |
| Description   | Contains the default or entered driver identifier   |
| Source  | DMI Management  |
| Type  | [Type of the input]   |
| Valid range of values   | [Complete list of valid values]   |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | [Description of components behaviour when input value is at boundary]                             |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | [Description of components behaviour when input value is out of valid range]                      |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | [Description of components behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious)] |

This work is licensed under the "openETCS Open-Licence Terms" (oOLT).

---

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | [Description of components behaviour when input value is at boundary]                             |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | [Description of components behaviour when input value is out of valid range]                      |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | [Description of components behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious)] |

---

888 **9.1.2.1.9 DMI\_train\_data**

---

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Input name  | DMI_train_data  |
| Description   | Contains the default or entered train data  |
| Source  | DMI Management  |
| Type  | [Type of the input]   |
| Valid range of values   | [Complete list of valid values]   |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | [Description of components behaviour when input value is at boundary]                             |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | [Description of components behaviour when input value is out of valid range]                      |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | [Description of components behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious)] |

---

889 **9.1.2.1.10 TIU\_trainStatus**

---

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Input name                              | TIU_trainStatus  |
| Description                             | Open/close Desk signal   |
| Source                                  | TIU  |
| Type                                    | [Type of the input]  |
| Valid range of values                   | [Complete list of valid values]  |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary     | [Description of components behaviour when input value is at boundary]        |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range | [Description of components behaviour when input value is out of valid range] |

---

---

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | [Description of components behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious)] |
|---|---|

---

890 **9.1.2.2 Outputs**891 **9.1.2.2.1 DMI\_identifier**


---

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Output name   | DMI_identifier  |
| Description   | Information about DMI (e.g. version, cabin identifier etc.)                                       |
| Destination   | DMI Management  |
| Type  | [Type of the output]  |
| Valid range of values   | [Complete list of valid values]   |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | [Description of components behaviour when output value is at boundary]                            |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | [Description of components behaviour when output value is out of valid range]                     |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | [Description of components behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious)] |

---

892 **9.1.2.2.2 DMI\_driver\_request**


---

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Output name   | DMI_driver_request  |
| Description   | Driver request or acknowledgement   |
| Destination   | DMI Management  |
| Type  | [Type of the output]  |
| Valid range of values   | [Complete list of valid values]   |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | [Description of components behaviour when output value is at boundary]                            |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | [Description of components behaviour when output value is out of valid range]                     |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | [Description of components behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious)] |

---

893 **9.1.2.2.3 DMI\_train\_data\_ack**

---

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Output name   | DMI_train_data_ack  |
| Description   | Train data acknowledgement  |
| Destination   | DMI Management  |
| Type  | [Type of the output]  |
| Valid range of values   | [Complete list of valid values]   |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | [Description of components behaviour when output value is at boundary]                            |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | [Description of components behaviour when output value is out of valid range]                     |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | [Description of components behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious)] |

---

894 **9.1.2.2.4 DMI\_status\_report**

---

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Output name   | DMI_status_report   |
| Description   | The actual status of DMI (keep alive)   |
| Destination   | DMI Management  |
| Type  | [Type of the output]  |
| Valid range of values   | [Complete list of valid values]   |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | [Description of components behaviour when output value is at boundary]                            |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | [Description of components behaviour when output value is out of valid range]                     |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | [Description of components behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious)] |

---

895 **9.1.2.2.5 DMI\_text\_message\_ack**

---

|                       |                                 |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------|
| Output name           | DMI_text_message_ack            |
| Description           | Text message acknowledgement    |
| Destination           | DMI Management                  |
| Type                  | [Type of the output]            |
| Valid range of values | [Complete list of valid values] |

---

---

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | [Description of components behaviour when output value is at boundary]                            |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | [Description of components behaviour when output value is out of valid range]                     |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | [Description of components behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious)] |

---

896 **9.1.2.2.6 DMI\_icons\_ack**

---

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Output name   | DMI_icons_ack   |
| Description   | Icon acknowledgement  |
| Destination   | DMI Management  |
| Type  | [Type of the output]  |
| Valid range of values   | [Complete list of valid values]   |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | [Description of components behaviour when output value is at boundary]                            |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | [Description of components behaviour when output value is out of valid range]                     |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | [Description of components behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious)] |

---

897 **9.1.2.2.7 DMI\_driver\_identifier**

---

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Output name                             | DMI_driver_identifier   |
| Description                             | Contains the default or entered driver identifier                             |
| Destination                             | DMI Management  |
| Type                                    | [Type of the output]  |
| Valid range of values                   | [Complete list of valid values]   |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary     | [Description of components behaviour when output value is at boundary]        |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range | [Description of components behaviour when output value is out of valid range] |

---

---

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | [Description of components behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious)] |
|---|---|

---

898 **9.1.2.2.8 DMI\_train\_running\_number**

---

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Output name   | DMI_train_running_number  |
| Description   | Contains the default or entered train running number  |
| Destination   | DMI Management  |
| Type  | [Type of the output]  |
| Valid range of values   | [Complete list of valid values]   |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | [Description of components behaviour when output value is at boundary]                            |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | [Description of components behaviour when output value is out of valid range]                     |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | [Description of components behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious)] |

---

899 **9.1.2.2.9 DMI\_train\_data**

---

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Output name   | DMI_train_data  |
| Description   | Contains the default or entered train data  |
| Destination   | DMI Management  |
| Type  | [Type of the output]  |
| Valid range of values   | [Complete list of valid values]   |
| Behaviour when value is at boundary                                   | [Description of components behaviour when output value is at boundary]                            |
| Behaviour for values out of valid range                               | [Description of components behaviour when output value is out of valid range]                     |
| Behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious) | [Description of components behaviour when value is erroneous, absent or unwanted (i.e. spurious)] |

---

## 10. F7: Manage TIU

- <sup>901</sup> This component is not part of the openETCS OBU currently and therefore no detailed description  
<sup>902</sup> is provided here.

## References

- 904 [1] ERA. *System Requirements Specification, SUBSET-026*, v3.3.0 edition, March 2012.